

Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

2nd Edition

Geoffrey Steadman

Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

2nd edition

© 2017 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work freely under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9913860-2-4

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Table of Contents

	Pages
Introduction to <i>Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita</i>	v-vi
How to Use This Commentary.....	vii
Running Core Vocabulary List.....	viii-xv
Abbreviations.....	xvi
Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives.....	130-31
Verb Synopses.....	132-39
Subjunctives.....	140
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List.....	141-47

Facilies Ab Urbe Condita

Part I

1. Aeneas.....	1	11. Tarquinius Superbus.....	33
2. The Founding of Alba Longa.....	4	12. The Banishment of Tarquinius.....	42
3. Romulus and Remus.....	5	13. Horatius Cocles.....	46
4. The Founding of Rome.....	8	14. Mucius Scaevola.....	49
5. The Sabine Women.....	10	15. Cloelia.....	51
6. Numa Pompilius.....	15	16. The Secession of the Plebs.....	52
7. Tullus Hostilius.....	18	17. Menenius Agrippa.....	54
8. Ancus Marcius.....	21	18. Cincinnatus.....	55
9. Tarquinius Priscus.....	24	19. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC.....	58
10. Servius Tullius.....	29		

Part II

20. Pyrrhus and Fabricius.....	65	26. Gaius Marius.....	91
21. Regulus and the 1 st Punic War.....	69	27. Lucius Cornelius Sulla.....	96
22. Hannibal and the 2 nd Punic War.....	74	28. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus.....	102
23. Quintus Fabius Maximus.....	77	29. Gaius Julius Caesar.....	107
24. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.....	79	30. Marcus Tullius Cicero.....	121
25. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE....	88		

Introduction to *Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita*

This book, just as its counterpart *Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles*, should be on the bedstand of every intermediate Latin student. This volume is a graded reader of Roman legends and biographies, which the modern authors Frederick Sanford and Harry Scott heavily adapted in part from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita* Books 1 and 2 and in part from Charles Lhomond's 1779 *De viris illustibus urbis Romae a Romulo ad Augustum*. The purpose of the stories is to give students who have already completed their study of elementary grammar additional practice before reading authentic Latin in Caesar's *Gallic War*. Sanford and Scott's book begins with the travels of Aeneas, continues with accounts of the seven kings and the heroics of the early Republic, traces the main figures of the Punic wars, and finishes with several short biographies including those of Caesar and Cicero.

The Latin stories in this commentary were first published in 1919 by Sandford and Scott in a volume called *A Junior Latin Reader*, which contained just the Latin text with a complete vocabulary in the glossary. In 1922, the authors greatly expanded the volume to include brief grammatical notes and vocabulary on the same page as the Latin text. The book was republished once again in 1929 under a new title, *A Second-Year Latin Reader*. In 1992 Gilbert Lawall and David Perry copied these same stories verbatim and added their own vocabulary and grammatical notes in a textbook entitled *Fabulae Romanae*. To my knowledge, the authors of *Fabulae Romanae* do not credit Sandford and Scott or their textbook as the source of the Latin stories.

The aim of this current edition is to make Sandford and Scott's stories even more accessible to intermediate-level Latin readers. To accomplish this goal, I have adopted the best features of Clyde Pharr's *Aeneid*. Below the ten lines of Latin text on each page is a commentary divided into halves. The top half includes all of the corresponding vocabulary that occur four or fewer times in the book, arranged alphabetically in two columns. The bottom half is devoted to grammatical notes, which are organized according to line numbers and arranged in two columns. One of the advantages of this format is that it allows me to include as much

information as possible on a page and at the same time ensure that the commentary entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers.

To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core word list at the beginning of this book that includes all words occurring five or more times. An alphabetized form of this same list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

Although this volume may be used as a supplement in the classroom, I hope that teachers will encourage students to keep a copy by their bedsides for casual reading and rereading during the summer months and winter breaks. While there is no substitute for meaningful classical and medieval Latin texts, much authentic Latin prose still remains beyond the reach for intermediate level students. This current commentary is made in the hopes that the short sections of connected prose will help readers of varying abilities develop reading proficiency and provide them with the knowledge and confidence necessary to read authentic Latin authors.

Geoffrey Steadman, Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
geoffreysteadman.com

How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading. Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have encountered most of these words in first-year Latin and should be able to master the list quickly. Once readers have reviewed these words, I recommend that they consult and memorize slightly less frequent words in *Fabulae Faciles* as they encounter them.

2. Read actively.

Read in Latin word order. Initially, readers have a tendency both (a) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (b) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so on. As you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with the Latin increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method. It is a lot of fun and with persistence very satisfying as well.

Develop the habit of making educated guesses as you read. The purpose of the graded reader is to provide you with an opportunity to encounter difficult constructions, particularly subjunctive clauses and indirect discourse, so frequently that you cannot help but to develop proficiency identifying and translating them. Make educated guesses as you read. If you guess correctly, the commentary will reaffirm your knowledge of the Latin. If you answer incorrectly, you will become more aware of your weaknesses and therefore more capable of correcting them.

3. Reread a passage immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin.

4. Reread the most recent passage immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

Running Core Vocabulary (Words 8 or More Times)

The following running core vocabulary list includes all words that occur eight or more times in *Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita*. These dictionary entries are not included in the commentary itself and therefore must be learned as soon as possible. The number in the left column indicates the page where the word first occurs. The number at the end of each entry indicates the frequency of the word in the commentary. For an alphabetized list, please consult the glossary.

page

- 1 **Aenēās, -ae m.:** Aeneas, 7
- 1 **ager, agrī m.:** land, field, territory, 19
- 1 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 26
- 1 **annus, -ī m.:** year, 36
- 1 **appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 17
- 1 **Asia, -ae f.:** Asia Minor, 9
- 1 **atque:** and, and also, and even, 43
- 1 **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum:** take, seize, 25
- 1 **clārus, -a, -um:** clear, distinguished, famous 8
- 1 **constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** decide, establish, 13
- 1 **cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 127
- 1 **dux, ducis m./f.:** leader, guide, chieftain, 28
- 1 **et:** and, also, even, 179
- 1 **ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 58
- 1 **filius, -iī m.:** son, child, 22
- 1 **ibi:** there, in that place, 13
- 1 **in:** in (+ abl.) , into (+ acc.), 256
- 1 **inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 27
- 1 **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** kill, slay, 26
- 1 **is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 167
- 1 **Ītalia, -ae f.:** Italy, 17
- 1 **Latīnus, -a, -um:** Latin (people); or King Latīnus 20
- 1 **locus -ī m. (pl. loca):** place, region, situation 16
- 1 **multitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** multitude, 10
- 1 **omnis, omne:** every, all, 59
- 1 **parō (1):** prepare, make (ready), 13
- 1 **pars, partis f.:** part; direction; faction, 26
- 1 **paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 10
- 1 **post:** after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 15

- 1 **que**: and, 149
- 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?)**: who, which, that, 253
- 1 **rēx, rēgis m.**: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 83
- 1 **sed**: but, moreover, however, 46
- 1 **sum, esse, fuī, futūrum**: be, 412
- 1 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**: hold, keep, 8
- 1 **ubi**: where, when, 17
- 1 **urbs, urbis f.**: city, 59
- 1 **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum**: come, go, 29
- 2 **ā, ab, abs**: (away) from, out of, 87
- 2 **ante**: before, in front of ; *adv.* before, 8
- 2 **auxilium, -ī n.**: help, aid, assistance, 11
- 2 **bellum, -ī n.**: war, 53
- 2 **condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum**: found, store away, hide, 6
- 2 **deinde**: then, thereupon, 31
- 2 **dō, dare, dedī, datum**: give, put; grant, 36
- 2 **duo, duae, duo**: two, 19
- 2 **Etrūscus, -a, -um**: Etruscan, 13
- 2 **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum**: make, do, 67
- 2 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**: carry, bear, endure, 22
- 2 **filia, -iae f.**: daughter, child, 12
- 2 **habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itum**: have, hold, 26
- 2 **īdem, eadem, idem**: the same, 8
- 2 **ille, illa, illud**: that (famous); he, she, it, 32
- 2 **inde**: from there, then, afterward, 30
- 2 **iūs, iūris n.**: justice, law, right, 20
- 2 **māter, mātris f.**: mother, 11
- 2 **nōmen, nōminis n.**: name, 19
- 2 **novus, -a, -um**: new, 19
- 2 **pāx, pācis f.**: peace, 31
- 2 **petō, -ere, -ivī, petītum**: seek, head for, 20
- 2 **postea**: after this, afterwards, 26
- 2 **sub**: under, 8
- 2 **suus, -a, -um**: his, her, its, their (own), 38
- 2 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so much, so large, 14
- 2 **tōtus -a, -um**: whole, entire, 12

- 2 **Turnus, -ī m.:** Turnus, 9
- 2 **ut:** as, when (+ ind.); so that, in order that, 76
- 2 **uxor, uxōris f.:** wife, spouse, 10
- 2 **victor, -ōris m.:** conquerer, vanquisher, 9
- 2 **vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum:** conquer, defeat, 19
- 3 **ad:** to, toward; near, 108
- 3 **adversus, -a, -um:** opposite, facing (acc) 13
- 3 **anteā:** before, earlier, formerly, previously, 9
- 3 **arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 14
- 3 **deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 10
- 3 **enim:** for, indeed, in truth, 24
- 3 **gēns, gentis f.:** clan, race, nation, herd, 9
- 3 **igitur:** therefore, then, accordingly, 14
- 3 **multus, -a, -um:** much, many, abundant, 24
- 3 **nōn:** not, by no means, not at all, 47
- 3 **possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 33
- 3 **pugna, -ae f.:** fight, 10
- 3 **sē:** himself, herself, itself, themselves, 89
- 3 **tamen:** nevertheless, however, 22
- 3 **trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), -itum:** pass (by), 14
- 4 **Albānus, -a, -um:** of Alba Longa, Albans, 10
- 4 **alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 29
- 4 **frāter, -tris m.:** brother, 10
- 4 **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum:** carry (on), wage, 15
- 4 **hic, haec, hoc:** this, that; he, she, it, 62
- 4 **honor, -ōris m.:** honor; offering, sacrifice, 8
- 4 **imperium, -ī n.:** power to command, rule, 23
- 4 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 29
- 4 **legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7
- 4 **mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 11
- 4 **per:** through, over, across, 28
- 4 **propter:** on account of, because of, 8
- 4 **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam:** certain, 22
- 4 **rēgnō (1):** rule, reign, 17
- 4 **rēgnum, -ī n.:** kingdom, realm, power, 21
- 4 **relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 10

- 4 **tum**: then, at that time, 34
- 5 **forte**: by chance, 11
- 5 **itaque**: and so, 12
- 5 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum**: order, command, 36
- 5 **nascor, nascī, nātus**: be born, grow, 14
- 5 **nec**: and not, nor; nec...nec (neither...nor), 16
- 5 **neque**: and not; neither...nor, 14
- 5 **pater, patris m.**: father, 40
- 5 **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum**: put, place, 9
- 5 **p̄rimus -a -um**: first, 30
- 5 **puer, puerī m.**: boy, 15
- 5 **Remus, -ī m.**: Remus, 12
- 5 **Rōmulus, -ī m.**: Romulus, 22
- 5 **Tiberis, is m.**: Tiber, 13
- 6 **apud**: among, in the presence of, 9
- 6 **audiō, -īre, -īvī, auditum**: hear, listen to, 10
- 6 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum**: begin, 13
- 6 **impetus, -ūs m.**: attack, onset, assault, 8
- 6 **perīculum, -ī n.**: risk, danger, peril, 8
- 6 **quoque**: also, 18
- 6 **rēs, reī f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 55
- 7 **animus, -ī m.**: soul, spirit, breath; pride, 17
- 7 **ita**: so, thus, 33
- 7 **iuvenis, -is m.**: youth, young man, 11
- 7 **nōbilis, -e**: noble, 10
- 7 **restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum**: replace, restore, 9
- 8 **cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum**: desire, long for, 8
- 8 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 16
- 8 **sōlus, -a, -um**: alone, only, lone, sole, 13
- 8 **verbum, -ī n.**: word, speech, 8
- 9 **causa, -ae f.**: reason, legal case; causā, for the sake of, 8
- 9 **creō (1)**: create, 21
- 9 **etiam**: besides, also, even, 29
- 9 **finitimus, -a, -um**: neighboring, bordering, 10
- 9 **Rōma, -ae f.**: Rome, 54
- 9 **populus, -ī m.**: people; population, 35

- 9 **profugiō, -ere, -fūgī**: flee, escape, 8
- 9 **vocō (1)**: call, name; invite, summon, 9
- 10 **ac**: and, and also, 17
- 10 **cīvitās. cīvitātis f.**: city-state; citizenship, 16
- 10 **coniūnx, -iugis m/f**: husband, wife, spouse, 9
- 10 **iam**: now, already, soon, 28
- 10 **lēgātus, -ī m.**: ambassador, envoy, legate, 21
- 10 **liberī, -ōrum m.**: children, 9
- 10 **medius, -a, -um**: middle of, 8
- 10 **mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum**: send, let go, 26
- 10 **nam**: for, 12
- 10 **pār, paris**: equal, similar, even, 8
- 10 **Rōmānus, -a, -um**: Roman, 91
- 10 **Sabīnus, -a, -um**: Sabine, 6
- 10 **statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum**: decide, establish, set up, 8
- 10 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**: see, 27
- 10 **vīs, vīs f.**: force, power; *pl.* **vīrēs**, strength, 13
- 11 **at**: but; mind you; but, you say, 9
- 11 **aut**: or, 17
- 11 **dē**: (down) from, about, concerning (abl.), 29
- 11 **inquam, inquis, inquit**: say, 19
- 11 **spēs, -eī f.**: hope, 8
- 11 **tempus, -poris n.**: time, 17
- 11 **quamquam**: although, 8
- 11 **virgō, virginis f.**: maiden, virgin, 11
- 12 **diēs, -eī m./f.**: day, time, season, 24
- 12 **exercitus, -ūs m.**: army, 37
- 12 **hostis, -is m./f.**: stranger, enemy, foe, 26
- 12 **maximus, -a, -um**: greatest; *maximē*, especially 15
- 12 **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**: arise, spring up, 8
- 12 **vir, virī m.**: man, male, 20
- 12 **volō, velle, voluī**: will, wish, be willing, 18
- 13 **caput, capitis n.**: head; life, 18
- 13 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum**: say, speak, tell, 37
- 13 **sequor, -ī, secūtus sum**: follow, attend, pursue, 17
- 13 **ūnus, -a, -um**: one, 18

- 14 **cīvis, -is m/f:** citizen, fellow citizen, 12
- 15 **lēx, lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 11
- 14 **nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, not any, 12
- 15 **plebs, plēbis f.:** common people, masses, 31
- 15 **prō:** before, in front of, for, 11
- 15 **senātus, -ūs f.:** senate, 38
- 16 **īstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** set up, establish, 12
- 16 **sacer, sacra, sacrum:** sacred, holy, 8
- 17 **trēs, tria:** three, 12
- 18 **ferōx, -ōcis:** fierce, savage, 8
- 18 **moriōr, morī, mortuus sum:** die; *mortuus*, dead 13
- 18 **proelium, -iī n.:** battle, 19
- 19 **conficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** finish (off), accomplish, 10
- 19 **fugiō, -ere, fūgī:** flee, hurry away, 11
- 19 **magnus, -a, -um:** great, large; important, 27
- 19 **mīlēs, mīlitis m.:** soldier, 16
- 20 **victoria, -ae f.:** victory, 9
- 22 **accipiō -ere -cēpī -ceptum:** receive, accept, 12
- 22 **cōsilium, -iī n.:** plan, advice; council, 14
- 22 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum:** lead, draw, 10
- 22 **iter, itineris n.:** way, road, journey, 11
- 22 **L.:** Lucius, 13
- 22 **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, 9
- 22 **Tarquinius, -ī m.:** Tarquinius, 46
- 24 **forum, -ī n.:** forum, 8
- 24 **opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9
- 24 **pūblicus, -a, -um:** public, of the people 19
- 25 **aqua, -ae f.:** water, 8
- 25 **proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum:** set out, depart, 16
- 25 **rēgia, -ae f.:** palace, 9
- 25 **Servius, -ī m.:** Servius, 13
- 25 **tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8
- 25 **vērūs, -a, -um:** true, real, 8
- 27 **sī:** if (only), whether, in case that, 18
- 28 **gravis, -e:** heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 8
- 28 **redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum:** go back, return, come back, 22

- 29 **princēps, -cipis m.:** leader; foremost, first 9
- 30 **conciliō (1):** win over, unite, 9
- 30 **domus, -ī f.:** house, home, dwelling, 9
- 31 **ego:** I, 14
- 32 **bonus, -a, -um:** good, kind, useful, 9
- 32 **corpus, corporis n.:** body, 10
- 32 **via, -ae f.:** way, road, 9
- 34 **nox, noctis f.:** night, 10
- 34 **quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 10
- 36 **Sex.:** Sextus, 5
- 36 **Sextus, -ī m.:** Sextus, 4
- 37 **nihil:** nothing, 12
- 37 **summus, -a, -um:** highest, greatest, top of, 8
- 39 **Brūtus, -ī m.:** Brutus, 13
- 44 **castra, -ōrum n.:** camp, 12
- 45 **cōsul, -is m.:** consul, 33
- 46 **flūmen, -inis n.:** river, stream, 12
- 46 **nē:** lest, that not, no, not, 12
- 46 **Porsena, -ae m.:** Lars Porsena, 8
- 48 **virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 12
- 49 **contrā:** against, 11
- 49 **adulescens, -ntis m./f.:** youth, 9
- 53 **concordia, -ae f.:** harmony, agreement, 8
- 53 **pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 8
- 54 **tribūnus, -ī m.:** tribune, officer, 11
- 54 **voluptās, -tātis f.:** pleasure, delight, 8
- 56 **dictātor, -ōris m.:** dictator, 16
- 58 **Gallus, -a, -um:** Gallic; Gaul, 17
- 58 **superō (1):** overcome, defeat, 12
- 60 **imperātor, -ōris m.:** commander, 10
- 61 **autem:** however, moreover, 16
- 63 **patria, -ae f.:** fatherland, country, 9
- 65 **captīvus, -ī m.:** captive, 10
- 65 **Fabricius, -ī m.:** Fabricius, 10
- 65 **Pyrrhus, -ī m.:** Pyrrhus (King of Epirus), 8
- 67 **vīta, -ae f.:** life; livelihood, 9

- 69 **Carthāginiēnsis, -is m.:** Carthaginian, 14
69 **Āfrica, -ae f.:** Africa, 12
69 **Rēgulus, -ī m.:** Regulus, 9
70 **Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.:** Carthage, 12
74 **Hispānia, -ae f.:** Hispania, 16
74 **Hannibal, -is m.:** Hannibal, 10
77 **Fabius, -ī m.:** Fabius, 9
79 **Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis m.:** Scipio, 27
84 **ingēns, ingentis:** huge, immense, vast, 8
91 **Marius, -ī m.:** Marius, 24
92 **Sulla, -ae m.:** Sulla, 23
93 **cīvilis, -e:** civil, of a citizen, 10
102 **Pompeius, -ī m.:** Pompey, 26
105 **Caesar, -is m.:** Caesar, 31
111 **Cicerō, Cicerōnis m.:** Cicero. 19

Abbreviations

1s, 1p	1 st person singular, 1 st plural	ll.	lines
abs.	absolute	m.	masculine
acc.	accusative	n.	neuter
act.	active	nom.	nominative
adj.	adjective	obj.	object
adv.	adverb	p. pl.	plural
app.	appositive	PPP	perfect passive participle
comp.	comparative	ppl.	participle
dat.	dative	pass	passive
dep.	deponent	pf.	perfect
d.o.	direct object	plpf.	pluperfect
f.	feminine	pred.	predicate
fut.	future	prep.	preposition
gen.	genitive	pres.	present
imp.	imperative	pron.	pronoun
impf.	imperfect	reflex.	reflexive
imper.	imperative	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative	s, sg.	singular
i.o.	indirect object	seq.	sequence
inf.	infinitive	subj.	subject or subjunctive
inter.	interrogative	superl.	superlative
l.	line	voc.	vocative

“There is properly no history, only biography.”

-Ralph Waldo Emerson

“To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.”

-von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

Three Period of Roman History

753 – 509	Roman Kings
509 – 31	Roman Republic
31 – AD 476	Imperial Period

Seven Legendary Kings of Rome

753 – 715	Romulus
715 – 673	Numa Pompilius
673 – 642	Tullus Hostilius
641 – 617	Ancus Martius
617 – 579	Lucius Tarquinius Priscus
578 – 535	Servius Tullius
535 – 509	Lucius Tarquinius Superbus

Early Roman Republic

509	First Consuls, Lucius Junius Brutus and Collatinus
508	King Porsenna besieges Rome for Tarquinius Superbus
	Horatius Cocles
	Mucius Scaevola
	Cloelia
494	First Secession of the Plebs and Menenius Agrippa
458	Cincinnatus as Dictator
390	Gauls sack Rome

1a. Aeneas

Ōlim in Asiā erat urbs antīqua, quae Troia appellāta est. Eam 1
urbem Graecī decem annōs obsēdērunt tandemque cēpērunt.
Priamō rēge filiisque interfectīs, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēās,
quī inter clārissimōs dēfensōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucīs comitibus
ex urbe effūgit; cum profugōs ex omnibus partibus coēgisset, in 5
Ītaliā migrāre constituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Italiae ubi erat urbs
Laurentum. Ibi cum Troiānī praedam ex agrīs agerent, Latīnus rēx
Aborīginēsque, quī ea loca tenēbant, agrōs dēfendere parāvērunt.
Sed Latīnus, postquam in colloquiō orīginem multitudinis ducisque 10

Aborīginēs, -um m.: Aborigines, 2
Aenēās, -ae m.: Aeneas, 7
antīquus, -a, -um: ancient
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
colloquium, -ī n.: conversation, conference, 4
comes, -itis m. f.: companion, comrade, 3
decem: ten, 2
dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum: defend, 6
dēfensor, -ōris m.: defender
deleō, -ēre, -ēvī, delētum: destroy
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee away, escape, 2
Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 4
Laurentēs, -um m.: Laurentines, 2

migrō (1): travel, migrate, 3
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5
ōlim: once, formerly, 3
orīgō, orīginis f.: origin
postquam: after, when, 6
praeda, -ae f.: plunder, spoils; cattle, 7
Priamus, -ī m.: Priam
profugus, -ī m.: a fugitive, refugee, 2
septem: seven, 4
tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6
Troia, -ae f.: Troy
Troiānī, -ōrum m.: Trojans, 4

- 1 **Troia:** nom. pred.
eam urbem: *this city*; is, ea, id before a noun that it modifies is a demonstrative adj. and may be translated as ‘this,’ or ‘that’ in the sg. and ‘these’ or ‘those’ in the plural.
- 2 **decem annōs:** *for...*; acc. duration of time
tandemque: enclitic *-que*, ‘and,’ attaches to the end of a word and is equivalent to the word ‘et’ preceding the word: ‘et tandem’
- 3 **Priamō rēge...interfectīs:** abl. absolute with the PPP of *interficiō*; note how the enclitic *-que* joins the two subjects of the abl. abs.: ‘Priamō rēge et filiīs’
- 4 **inter:** *among...*; translate as ‘between’ with two items or as ‘among’ with more than two
clārissimōs: superlative degree, *clārus fuerat:* plpf. sum
- 5 **cum...coēgisset:** *when...*; plpf. subjunctive of *cōgō*, *cōgere:* translate this verb as one

- would a plpf. indicative
post: *after...*; a preposition governing an acc., while *postquam*, ‘after,’ in line 10 is a conjunction introducing a temporal clause
- 7 **eam partem:** see note regarding *eam urbem* in line 1
 - 8 **Laurentum:** in apposition to *urbes*
cum...agerent: *while...drove;* impf. subj. agō: translate the verb in the impf. tense. We may imagine *praeda*, ‘loot,’ as a treasure chest of gold or silver, but in the ancient world ‘cattle’ was a moveable form of wealth and often the source of plunder, as it is in the passage above. The idiom *praedam agere* is ‘to drive away the cattle.’
 - 9 **ea loca:** *these...*; neut. pl. see note for line 1
 - 10 **ducisque:** *et ducis*

1b. Aeneas

cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque posteā eī Lāvīniam fīliam in mātirimōnium dedit. Troiānī urbem condidērunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit. Deinde Turnus, rēx Rutulōrum, cui Lāvīnia ante adventum Aenēae dēspōnsa erat, bellō Latīnum Troiānōsque aggressus est.

15

Victī sunt Rutulī, sed victōrēs ducem Latīnum amīsērunt. Inde Turnus auxilium petiit ab Etruscīs, quī tōtam Italiam fāmā nōminis suī implēverant; illī metuentēs novam urbem multitūdine et opibus crescentem laetī auxilium tulērunt. Aenēās in tantō discrimine, ut Aborīginēs Troiānōsque sub eōdem iūre atque nōmine habēret, 20

Aborīginēs, -um m.: Aborīgines, 2
adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach, 2
Aenēās, -ae m.: Aeneas, 7
aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum: go to, attack, 3
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 4
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6
crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, increase, 4
dēspōndō, -ere, -spōndī: betroth, 3
discrimen, -crīminis n.: crisis, peril, 5

- 11 **Aenēā:** abl., Aenēās is 1st decl. masc.
eī: *to him*; dat. sg. is, ea, id; although the placement at the beginning of the clause suggests that eī is nom. pl., this pronoun is a dat. sg.; see pg. 130 for the forms
posteā: an adv., compare post, postquam
12 **quam...Lāvīnium appellāvit:** *called (x) (y)*; this verb governs a double accusative construction (acc. dir. object and acc. pred.)
13 **uxōris:** i.e. Lavinia, mentioned in line 11; Aeneas' first wife and mother to the son Ascanius was Creusa, who was killed as the family escaped the fall of Troy
14 **cui:** *to whom*; dat. sg.; note that pronouns very often have an '-i' in the dat.
15 **Latīnum:** i.e. Latinus, king of the Latins
aggressus est: pf. aggredior: the passive endings in the dictionary entry indicates that this verb is deponent and therefore should be translated as pf. active with acc. object
16 **victī sunt:** pf. pass. vincō; Rutulī is subject

fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7
impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, implētum: fill, 3
laetus, -a, -um: happy, joyful, glad, 4
Lāvīnia, -ae f.: Lavinia, 3
Lāvīnium, -ī n.: Lavinium, 2
mātirimōnium, -ī n.: marriage, 7
metuō, -ere, -uī: fear, dread, 3
ops, opis f.: power; pl. resources, influence, 6
Rutulus, -ī m.: Rutulians, 3
Troiānī, -ōrum m.: Trojans, 4

- 17 **ducem Latīnum:** acc. sg. Latinus
18 **suī:** gen. sg. of the reflexive possessive adj. suus, -a, -um modifying nōminis; since the antecedent of a reflexive is always the subject, translate this adj. as 'their own'
illī: nom. pl. ille; i.e. Etruscans
metuentēs: pres. pple metuō
multitūdine et opibus: *in (respect to)...and in (respect to)...*; abl. of respect qualifies and clarifies the meaning of an adjective, in this case, the pres. pple crescentem
19 **laetī:** *happily*; 'happy,' adjectives in the nom. are often translated as adverbs
tulērunt: 3p pf. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
ut: *so that...might....*; purpose + impf. subj.
20 **Aborīginēs:** i.e. the native inhabitants; in this case, the Latin people
eō-dem: abl. sg., īdem, eadem, idem (is, ea, id + indeclinable -dem)
atque: 'and,' or, as often, it can emphasize the second term: 'and even' or 'and also'

1c. Aeneas

Latīnōs utramque gentem appellāvit. Cum adversus Etrūscōs sē moenibus dēfendere posset, tamen in aciem copiās ēdūxit. Etrūscī vicī sunt; victōrēs tamen ducem ut anteā amīsērunt; post pugnam enim Aenēam reperīre nōn potuērunt; multī igitur eum ad deōs trānsīsse crēdidērunt.

25

aciēs, -ēi f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7
dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfensum: defend, 6

21 **utramque:** acc. sg., uterque

appellāvit: governs a double acc. (acc. dir. obj. and acc. pred.), see note for line 11

cum...posset, tamen...: *although...*; cum clause + impf. subj. possum. When a cum-clause is followed by the word 'tamen' in the main clause, clause is concessive in sense and cum should be translated as 'although'

sē: *himself*; reflexive, the antecedent is the subject, Aeneas

23 **vicī sunt:** 3p pf. pass. vincō

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: lead out, draw
moenia, -ōrum n.: walls, 2

reperiō -īre -pperī -pertum: find, discover, 3
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each, both, 6

ut anteā: *as before*; ut introduces a clause of comparison

24 **enim:** *for...*; or 'indeed;' enim is a postpositive (placed second) but should be translated first in English

potuērunt: 3p pf. ind. possum

multī: a substantive, an adjective which functions as a noun: if masculine, add the word 'men' or 'people,' if feminine, add 'women,' if neuter, add 'things'

eum...trānsīsse: *that he...*; ind. disc., eum is acc. subject; pf. inf. of trānseō

2. The Founding of Alba Longa

Lāvīnia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascānius, Aenēae fīlius, adolēvit. 1
Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīniī multitūdinem māt̄rī urbem
relīquit; ipse novam aliam urbem sub Albānō monte condidit, quae
Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs post Ascānium imperium
Albānum gessērunt. Quīdam ex hīs, cui nōmen Proca erat, duōs 5
fīliōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlium, habuit. Numitōrī, quī māior erat,
rēgnum relīquit. Pulsō tamen fratre, Amūlius rēgnāvit. Fīlium fratris
necāvit; fīliam Rhēam Silviam per speciem honōris sacerdotem
Vestae lēgit. 9

abundō: overflow, 2

adolescō, -ere, adolevī: grow up, 3

Aenēās, -ae m.: Aeneas, 7

Alba Longa, -ae f.: Alba Longa

Amūlius, -iī m.: Amulius, 4

Ascānius, -iī m.: Ascanius, 2

condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6

Lāvīnia, -ae f.: Lavinia, 3

Lāvinium, -i n.: Lavinium, 2

legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7

2 **ille:** *that one*; i.e. Ascanius

propter...multitūdinem: abundantem is a pres. pple modifying multitūdinem, which in turn is the obj. of the preposition propter
māt̄rī: *to...;* dat. ind. object

3 **ipse:** *(he) himself*; nom. sg. intensive pronoun; as often, the noun is missing but can be inferred from masc. sg. ipse
sub...: i.e. at the foot of Mt. Alba

4 **Alba Longa:** nom. pred., translate after appellāta est, quae is fem. sg. nom. subject

5 **gessērunt:** *carried out*; pf. gerō
Quīdam: *a certain one*; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam is a common indefinite pronoun, which declines just as quī, quae, quod but with minor variations; the ending ‘-dam,’ however, is indeclinable

5 **cui...erat:** *to whom was...;* dat. sg. relative pronoun; a dat. of possession with the verb sum, esse and may be translated three different ways: (1) ‘to whom...was,’ (2) ‘whose...was,’ or (3) ‘who had...’

6 **Numitōrī:** *to...;* dat. ind. obj.
māior (natū): *older*; this comparative adj. of magnus is often translated as ‘greater,’

māior, maius: greater, larger; older, 4

necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6

Numitor, -ōris m.: Numitor, 7

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6

Proca, -ae m.: Proca

quoad: how far, as far as, as long as, 2

Rhea, -ae f.: Rhea

sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.: priest, 4

species, -ei f.: sight, look, appearance, 3

Vesta, -ae f.: Vesta

but in the context of age is often translated as ‘greater (by birth)’ or ‘older.’ The Romans often used the plural form maiōrēs, ‘the elders,’ as a synonym for ‘ancestors.’

7 **Pulsō...fratre:** abl. absolute; as so often, translate the noun before the PPP, pellō
tamen: as a postpositive, this word is not part of the abl. absolute and should be translated first in the sentence
fratris: i.e. of Numitor; Numiter had one son and one daughter. Amulius kills the son so that he cannot grow up to reclaim the throne. The daughter is conveniently made a Vestal Virgin, so that she may promise to be celibate and not have children for 30 years.

8 **necāvit:** Amulius is the subject.

Rhēam Silviam: Rhea Silvia is her name, here in apposition to fīliam

per speciem honōris: i.e. through the pretence of honor; as mentioned above, Amulius’ real purpose is to keep his niece from giving birth to heirs to the throne
sacerdotem Vestae: *as...;* acc. predicate, the verb governs a double acc

3a. Romulus and Remus

Ex hāc filiā nātī sunt duo filiī, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, 1
ut fāma est, Mars deus erat. Sed nec deī nec hominēs mātrem et
puerōs ā crūdēlitātē rēgiā defendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data
est; puerōs rēx in Tiberim inīcī iussit. Forte Tiberis abundāverat,
neque eī quī puerōs ferēbant adīre ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque 5
puerōs in alveō posuērunt atque in tenuī aquā relīquērunt.

Sed alveus in siccō sēdit. Deinde lupa sitiēns, sīc enim est
trādītum, ex montibus quī circā sunt ad puerōrum vāgītum cursum
flexit. Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, eam invēnit puerōs nūtrientem. Ab
eō atque Lārentiā uxōre puerī ēducātī sunt. Cum prīmum 10

abundō (1): overflow, 2

adeō: such a degree, so, 2

altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 2

alveus, -ī m.: basket, small vessel, 2

circā: about, around, 4

crūdēlitās, -tātis f.: cruelty, crudeness, 3

cursum, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6

custōdia, -ae f.: guard, watch

dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfensum: defend, 6

ēducō (1): bring up, rear, train, 5

fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7

Faustulus, -ī m.: Faustulus

flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum: turn, bend, 3

homō, -inis m./f.: man, mortal, human, 4

inīciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw in or upon

inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come upon,
find, 5

Lārentia, -ae f.: Larentia

lupa, -ae n.: she-wolf

Mārs, Mārtis m.: Mars, 2

nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: feed, nourish

pāstor, -ōris m.: shepherd, 4

rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6

sacerdōs, -dōtis m./f.: priest, 4

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī: sit, sit down; set, 7

sīc: thus, in this way, 6

siccum, -ī n.: dry land

sitiēns, sitientis: thirsty

tenuis, -e: thin, shallow

trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditum: hand over, give, 7

vāgītus, -ūs m.: wailing, crying

1 **Ex hāc filiā:** i.e. Rhea Silva,

nātī sunt: 3p pf. deponent nascor: translate
as pf. active

2 **ut:** as; with indicative introducing a clause
of comparison

nec...nec: neither...nor

4 **inīcī:** pass. inf. of inīciō (in + iaciō)

iussit: 3s pf., iubeō

Forte: by chance; abl. as adv. formed not
from the adj. fortis, -e, 'brave,' but from the
noun fors, fortis, 'luck'

5 **eī quī:** those who...; 'they who...' nom. pl.
from is, ea, id and relative pronoun

altam: altus can mean 'high' or 'deep'

poterant: impf. possum

6 **posuērunt:** 3p pf. pōnō

tenuī: abl. sg., 3rd decl. i-stem adjectives
will have an '-i' in the abl. sg.

7 **sīc enim...:** for thus...; or 'indeed' enim is
a postpositive and should be translated first

est trādītum: it...; trādītum est, impersonal
pf. passive trādō, hence the neuter -um

9 **eam:** i.e. the fem. sg. lupa

nūtrientem: pres. pple nūtriō

Ab...: by...; abl. of agent

10 **ēducātī sunt:** note that this 3p pf. passive
comes from 1st conjugation ēducō, -āre and
not 3rd conjugation ēdūcō, ēdūcere

Cum prīmum: As soon as...; 'When first...'
prīmum is an adverbial acc.

3b. Romulus and Remus

adolēvērunt, venārī coepērunt et in latrōnēs praedā onustōs impetūs facere pāstōribusque praedam dīvidere.

Dum quoddam lūdīcrum celebrātur, latrōnēs īrātī ob praedam āmissam impetum in Rōmulum et Remum fēcērunt; captum Remum rēgī Amūliō trādīdērunt. Puerōs praedam ex agrīs Numitōris ēgisse incūsābant. Sīc ad supplicium Numitōrī Remus dēditur.

Ab initiō Faustulus crēdiderat puerōs iussū rēgis expositōs apud sē ēducārī. Tum periculō Remī mōtus rem Rōmulō aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audīverat frātrēs geminōs esse; tum comparāns et

adolescō, -ere, adolevī, adultum: grow up, 3
āmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6
Amūlius, -ī m.: Amulius, 4
aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum: open, disclose, 5
celebrō (1): celebrate, visit frequently
comparō (1): prepare, collect, 2
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7
ēducō (1): bring up, rear, train, 5
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: set forth, 5
Faustulus, -ī m.: Faustulus
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, 3
incūsō (1): accuse, complain of, 3
initium, -ī n.: beginning, initiation, entrance 2

īrātus, -a, -um: angry, 6
iussus, -ūs m.: order, iussū by order, 2
latrō, -ōnis m.: robber, 2
lūdīcrum, -ī n.: game, play
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum: move, arouse, 5
Numitor, -ōris m.: Numitor, 7
ob: on account of, because of, 5
onustus, -a, -um: loaded, burdened
pāstor, -ōris m.: shepherd, 4
praeda, -ae f.: plunder, spoils; cattle, 7
sīc: thus, in this way, 6
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, supplication, 5
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7
venor, -ārī, venātus sum: hunt

- 11 **coepērunt:** 3p pf.; coepī is a defective verb and is used only in the pf. system
in: *against...*
praedā: the loot is often cattle, not treasure
impetūs facere: *to make attacks*; a common idiom; impetūs is 4th decl. acc. pl.
12 **pāstōribusque:** *and among...*; dat. ind. object of dīvidere
13 **quoddam:** *a certain*; indefinite pronoun
14 **in:** *against...*
14 **captum...trādīdērunt:** In English, we prefer to use two main verbs, ‘cēpērunt et trādīdērunt,’ whereas in Latin, the Romans typically made the first action into a participle, here PPP, and employ one finite verb
Puerōs...ēgisse: *that...*; ind. disc. with pf. inf. agō; since the praeda are cattle, it is sensible that the verb means ‘drive’

- ad:** *for...*; ad + acc. often expresses purpose
18 **puerōs...ēducārī:** *that...*; ind. disc., pres. pass. of 1st conj. ēducō, not 3rd conj. ēdūcō
apud: *at the house of...*; + acc.
19 **sē:** reflexive, in ind. disc. the antecedent, as often, is the subject of the main clause and not the acc. subj. of the ind. disc.
periculō: *by...*; abl. of cause
mōtus: *having been upset*; PPP, moveō very often denotes emotion rather than physical motion; Faustulus is the subject
Rōmulō: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.
Forte: *by chance*; ablative as adv., from fors, fortis and not fortis, forte
20 **frātrēs geminōs esse:** *that...*; ind. disc., with inf. sum, esse; the second acc. is an acc. predicative noun
comparāns: nom. sg. pres. pple

3c. Romulus and Remus

aetātem eōrum et nōbilem animum Remī nepōtem agnōvit. Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in rēgem Amūlium impetum facit; Remus, aliā parātā manū, adiuvat. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium Albānum Numitōrī avō ab iuvenibus restitūtum est. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus in eīs locīs ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant 25 urbem condere constituērunt.

adiuvō, -āre, -iuvī, -iutum: help, assist, 4
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum: recognize, 2
Amūlius, -ī m.: Amulius, 4
avus, avī m.: grandfather
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6

ēducō (1): bring up, rear, train, 5
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: set forth, 5
manus, -ūs f.: hand; group, 7
nepōs, nepōtis m.: grandson, decendent, 3
Numitor, -ōris m.: Numitor, 7
pāstor, -ōris m.: shepherd, 4

- 21 **et aetātem...et nōbilem:** *both...and...*; all objects of the pple
eōrum: gen. pl. of is, ea, id
Remī: gen. possession with animum. The story assumes that admirable traits and a virtuous character found among the nobility are inheritable and therefore that Romulus and Remus can easily be distinguished from everyone else.
22 **manū:** *a group*; elsewhere ‘hand’
in: *against...*
impetum facit: idiom
23 **aliā parātā manū:** abl. absolute, as often,

- translate the noun ‘aliā manū’ first then the PPP
24 **Albānum:** *Alban*; i.e. of Alba Longa
Numitōrī avō: dat. of interest
25 **eīs:** *those*; a demonstrative adj., translate this form of is, ea, id as ‘these’ or ‘those’
25 **ubi expositī (erant):** *where...*; ellipsis, a relative clause; plpf. pass., supply ‘erant’ which is missing through ellipsis, a stylistic device where the author leaves out words that must be understood
ubique: et ubi

4a. The Founding of Rome

Uterque iuvenis nōmen novae urbī dare eamque regere 1
cupiēbat. Sed quod geminī erant nec rēs aetāte dēcernī poterat,
auguriīs ūsī sunt. Ā Remō prius vīsī sunt sex vulturēs. Rōmulō
posteā duodecim sēsē ostendērunt. Uterque ab amīcīs rēx
appellātus est atque rēgnum postulābat. Cum īrātī arma rapuissent, 5
in pugnā Remus cecidit.

Ex aliā fāmā Remus illūdēns frātrem novōs mūrōs urbis
trānsiluit, inde interfectus est ab īrātō Rōmulō, quī haec verba
quoque addidit: “Sīc deinde pereat quīcumque alius trānsiliet
moenia mea.” Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus; conditam 10

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: bring to, add, 7
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
amīcum, -ī m.: friend, 4
augurium, -ī n.: augury, divination, 2
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum: fall, 4
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5
duodecim: twelve, 3
fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, 3
illūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum: mock, ridicule
īrātus, -a, -um: angry, 6
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6
moenia, -ium n.: walls, 2
mūrus, -ī m.: wall, rampart, 3

- 1 **Uterque:** nom. sg. adj. with iuvenis
eamque: et eam; et joins the two infs. and eam refers to the fem. sg. urbs
- 2 **quod:** *because...*; causal quod clause
rēs: nom. sg., the noun is 5th decl.
dēcernī: pres. pass. inf.
- 3 **ūsī sunt:** 3p pf. ūtor, translate this deponent in the active voice and governs an ablative
prius: comparative adverb
vīsī sunt: 3p pf. pass. videō
Rōmulō: dat. ind. obj.
- 4 **duodecim (vultūrēs):** nom. subj.; ellipsis, supply the missing noun
sēsē: emphatic form of the reflexive sē
uterque: *each (one)*
rēx: nom. pred. following pf. pass. appellātus est
- 5 **rēgnum:** this word may mean ‘kingship,’ or

ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
pereō, -ire, perīī: pass away, perish, 3
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5
potior, -iri, potītus sum: possess
prior, prius: before, first. previous, sooner, 5
quīcumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever
rapīō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: seize, snatch, 6
regō, regere, rēxī, rectum: rule, be king
sex: six, 2
sīc: thus, in this way, 6
trānsilīō, -ire, -uī: jump across or over, 2
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each, both, 6
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum: use, employ, enjoy, 5
vultur, -is m.: vulture

- ‘kingdom’ depending on the context
cum...rapuissent: *when...*; plpf. subj.; translate as you would an plpf. indicative
īrātī: *they angrily...*; nom. adjectives are often translated as adverbs in English
- 7 **ex aliā fāmā:** i.e. in another version of the story
 - illūdēns frātrem:** nom. sg. pres. pple
 - 9 **pereat:** *May...perish*; optative subj. (subj. of wish), 3s pres. subj. pereō.
quīcumque: *whosoever...*; or ‘anyone who;’ a relative pronoun introducing a relative clause that ends with mea. The missing antecedent is subject of pereat.
trānsiliet: 3s fut.
 - 10 **potītus est:** 3s pf. potior: translate in the active voice. Just as ūtor in line 3, this verb governs an abl. object.

4b. The Founding of Rome

urbem ā suō nōmine Rōmam appellāvit.

Palātium primum, in quō ipse erat educātus, mūnivit. Vocātā ad concilium multitudīne, iūra dedit. Insignia quoque imperiī, sellam curulem togamque praetextam, duodecim lictōrēs sūmpsit. Asylum aperuit in monte Capitōlinō, quō multī ex finitimīs populīs 15 profūgērunt. Creāvit etiam centum senātōrēs, quī honoris causā patrēs appellātī sunt.

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum: open, disclose, 5
Asylum, Asylī n.: Asylum; refuge
Capitōlinus, -a, -um: Capitoline, 4
centum: hundred
concilium, -iī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 3
curūlis, -e: curule
duodecim: twelve, 3
educō (1): to bring up, rear, train, 5
īnsigne, -is n.: badge, decoration, mark

lictōr, lictōris m.: lictor (bodyguard), 5
mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: fortify, build, 5
Palātium, -iī n.: Palatine hill
praetextus, -a, -um: bordered
sella, -ae f.: chair, 2
senātor, -ōris m.: senator
sumō, sumere, sumpsī, -ptum: take (up), 5
toga, -ae f.: toga, 5

- 11 **urbem...Rōmam appellāvit:** *called (x) (y)*; this verb governs a double accusative (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
suō: a reflexive possessive adjective, the antecedent is the subject
12 **primum:** *first (of all)*; an adverbial acc.
ipse: *he himself*; intensive pronoun,
Vocātā...multitudīne: abl. absolute, as always, translate the noun first
13 **iūra:** neuter acc. pl., iūs, iūris
14 **sellam...togam...lictōrēs:** all three are in apposition to acc. plural insignia; the curule chair is a specially designed chair, the toga praetexta has a purple-dyed border worn later by senator and equestrian class, and the lictors are bodyguards who accompany the king
sūmpsit: i.e. adopted

- 15 **Asylum:** acc. obj.; this is the proper name for the ridge located between the two peaks of the Capitoline Hill; our word for 'refuge' is derived from Romulus' use of the location in this passage
in monte Capitōlinō: *on the Capitoline hill*; Although described as a mountain, the Capitoline is actually a large hill
15 **quō:** *to where*; a relative adverb, not a relative pronoun: quō is often employed to express place to which
16 **causā:** *for the sake of...*; + preceding gen.; causā is a preposition
17 **patrēs:** a predicate nom.; translate after appellātī sunt; the senators were likely the patres familias, leading fathers, of the most powerful families in Rome

5a. The Sabine Women

Iam rēs Rōmāna firma et finitimīs cīvitātibus bellō pār erat. Sed 1
Rōmānī neque uxōrēs neque cum finitimīs iūs cōnūbiī habēbant.
Tum Romulus quōsdam ex patribus lēgātōs in vīcīnās gentēs mīsīt
quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nusquam
benignē lēgātī audītī sunt; nam finitimī nōn solum Rōmānōs 5
spernēbant, sed etiam tantam in mediō crescentem urbem
metuēbant. Itaque īrātī Rōmānī vī ūfī statuērunt.

Ad eam rem Rōmulus, lūdīs parātīs, finitimōs ad spectāculum
invītāvit. Multī convēnērunt ut lūdōs spectārent et novam urbem
vidērent. Sabīnōrum omnis multitudō cum līberīs ac coniugibus 10

benignus, -a, -um: kind, kindly, 3
cōnūbium, -ī n.: marriage
conveniō -īre -vēnī: come together, 6
crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, increase, 4
firmus, -a, -um: strong, steadfast, 3
invītō (1): invite, summon, 2
īrātus, -a, -um: angry, 6
lūdus, -ī m.: game, sport; school, 6
metuō, -ere, -uī: fear, dread, 3

- 1 **rēs Rōmāna:** *the Roman state*
finitimīs cīvitātibus: dat. of special adj. pār
bellō: *in (respect to)...*; abl. of respect often
qualifies or clarifies an adjective
- 2 **neque...neque:** *neither...nor*
finitimīs: *neighbors*; a substantive (adj.
used as a noun)
iūs: *the right*; elsewhere 'law'; neut. acc. sg.
- 3 **quōsdam...lēgātōs:** *certain...*; indefinite
adj., quōdam
- 4 **quī...peterent:** *who would...*; a relative
clause of purpose (quī = ut eī) with impf.
subj. petō
novō populō: *for...*; dat. of interest
- 5 **benignē...audītī sunt:** i.e. the neighbors
did not respond positively to the envoys
requests; benignē is an adverb
finitimī: see line 2
nōn solum...sed etiam: *not only...but also*;

nusquam: nowhere
Sabīnus, -a, -um: Sabine, 6
societās, -tātis f.: association, alliance, 5
spectāculum, -ī n.: spectacle, 3
spectō (1): watch, look at, 2
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum: spurn, reject, 3
ūtor, ūfī, ūsum: use, employ, enjoy, 5
vīcīnus, -a, -um: neighboring, 3

- solum is an adv. (adverbial acc.)
7 **vī:** abl. obj. of inf. ūfī; the irregular abl. of
vīs
ūfī: pres. inf. ūtor. Although passive in
form, translate this deponent in the active.
Ūtor governs an ablative object.
- 8 **Ad...:** *For...*; as often, expressing purpose
eam: *this*; a demonstrative adj.; translate this
form of is, ea, id as 'this' or 'that'
lūdīs parātīs: ablative absolute with PPP
 - 9 **ut...spectārent...vidērent:** *so that...might*;
purpose clause governing impf. subj.
 - 10 **Sabīnōrum:** a partitive gen. governed by
the nom. sg. multitudō
omnis: *entire*
līberīs: *children*; līberī can easily be
confused with the adj. līber, lībera, līberum,
therefore readers must often use context to
determine which word is intended

5b. The Sabine Women

vēnit. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit omnēsque intentī in lūdōs erant, tum, signō datō, Rōmānī rapere virginēs coepērunt. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt clāmantēs Rōmānōs hospitium violāvisse. Nec raptae virginēs aut spem dē sē meliōrem aut indignātiōnem minōrem habēbant. Sed ipse Rōmulus circumībat ostendēbatque id 15 patrum virginum superbiā factum esse. “Quamquam vī captae estis,” inquit, “omnia iūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis.”

Iam multō minus perturbātī animī raptārum erant. At parentēs eārum cīvitātēs finitimās, ad quās eius iniūriae pars pertinēbat, ad arma concitābant. Hae cīvitātēs omnēs ā Rōmulō victae sunt. 20

circumēō, -īre, -īī: go around
clāmō (1): cry, shout out, 6
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 3
hospitium, ī n.: (rules of) hospitality, 2
indignātiō, -tiōnis f.: indignity, outrage, 4
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 5
intentus, -a, -um: attentive, intent, 3
lūdus, -ī m.: game, sport; school, 6
melior, melius: better, 4
minor, minus: smaller, less, 6

ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
parēns, parentis m.: parent, ancestor, 4
pertineō, -ēre, -tinūī: pertain to; reach
perturbō (1): disturb, throw into confusion, 3
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: seize, snatch, 6
signum, -ī n.: sign, signal; standard, 6
spectāculum, -ī n.: spectacle, 3
superbia, -ae f.: arrogance, pride, 2
violō (1): violate, commit outrage, 4

- 11 **intentī:** i.e. focused; a pred. after erant
in: upon...
- 12 **signō datō:** abl. abs. with PPP dō, dare
rapere: to kidnap; or ‘to snatch,’ Although the derivative denotes sexual assault, the Latin verb rapiō denotes the act of grabbing or stealing
virginēs: maidens; a common term for an unmarried young woman
- 13 **clāmantēs:** pres. pple. modifying parentēs
Rōmānōs...violāvisse: that...; ind. disc. with pf. inf. governed by clāmantēs
hospitium: i.e. the rules of hospitality; a host should not steal from his guest
- 14 **nec...habēbant:** and...did not have; apply the negative to the main verb
raptae: PPP, rapiō, see note 12 above
aut...aut: either...or
dē: concerning...; abl. of respect
meliōrem: more; elsewhere ‘better,’ the comparative of bonus, -a, -um
indignātiōnem: this word describes the resentment of being treated in a manner not (in-) worthy (dignus-a-um) of one’s status

- 15 **minōrem:** comparative parvus
ipse: he himself; intense
id...factum esse: that it had been...; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf.; id refers to the kidnapping; The ind. disc. is in secondary sequence (main verb past), translate inf. as plpf. pass.
- 16 **superbiā:** because of...; abl. of cause
vī: abl. means, from the irregular noun vīs,
captae estis: 2p pf. pass., Romulus speaks directly to the kidnapped women
- 17 **inquit:** he says; this verb of speaking always indicates direct discourse
iūra: rights; neuter acc. pl. iūs
- 18 **multō:** much; ‘by much,’ abl. degree of difference often with comparative degree
minus: comparative adverb
perturbātī: PPP as a predicate nom.; animī is nom. subject
raptārum: of (the girls)...; PPP rapiō
- 19 **ad quās:** relative, cīvitātēs is antecedent
eius iniūriae: of this...; partitive gen.
- 20 **victae sunt:** pf. pass. vincō

5c. The Sabine Women

Novissimum bellum ab Sabīnīs ortum est, quod multō maximum fuit. Sabīnī arcem Rōmānam in monte Capitōlīnō dolō cēpērunt. Rōmānī posterō diē arcem recipere cōnātī sunt. Ubi Hostius Hostīlius, dux exercitūs Rōmānī, cecidit, cōnfestim aciēs Rōmāna pulsa est. At Rōmulus templum vōvit Iovī Statōrī ōrāvītque 25 auxilium. Tum crēdēns precēs suās audītās esse “hinc,” inquit, “Rōmānī, Iuppiter optimus maximus nōs resistere ac renovāre pugnam iubet.” Resistērunt Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce iussī.

Tum Sabīnae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre, ut pācem ā patribus virīsque implōrārent. Ducēs eā rē mōtī nōn 30

aciēs, -ēi f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6
arx, arcis f.: citadel, hilltop, 5
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 5
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum: fall, 4
caelestis, -e: celestial, heavenly; subs. gods, 2
Capitōlinus, -a, -um: Capitoline, 4
cōnfestim: at once, immediately, 3
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7
dolus, -ī m.: trick, deceit, 2
hinc: from here, hence, 3
Hostīlius, -ī m.: Hostilius, 2
Hostius, -ī m.: Hostius
implōrō (1): implore, beg, beseech
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring in, wage, 5
Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 4
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum: move, arouse, 5
mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 5

21 **novissimum:** *the last*; ‘most recent,’
ab Sabīnīs: *from the Sabines*
ortum est: pf. dep. orior: translate active
quod: relative pronoun
multō: *far*; ‘by much,’ abl. of degree of difference, often with comparative degree
dolō: abl. of means
 23 **posterō diē:** *on...*; abl. of time when
 24 **exercitūs:** gen. sg. 4th decl. noun
cecidit: 3s pf. cadō; a euphemism for dying
 25 **Iovī Statōrī:** *to...*; dat. ind. obj., Jupiter (gen. Iōvis, dat. Iōvī, acc. Iōvem, abl. Iōve)
 26 **crēdēns:** nom. sg. pres. pple crēdō
precēs suās...audītās esse: *that...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf.; suās is a possessive

nōs: we, us, 3
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 6
ōrō (1): pray, entreat, beseech, 3
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6
posterus, -a, -um: following, next, 2
prex, precis f.: prayer, entreaty
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take, 4
renovō (1): renew, make new, 2
resistō, -ere, -stītī: stand still, halt; oppose, 7
Sabīnus, -a, -um: Sabine, 6
Stator, -ōris m.: the Stayer
tamquam: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6
tēlum, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6
templum, -ī n.: temple, 5
volō (1): fly
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum: vow, swear, 2
vōx, vōcis f.: voice, 7

reflexive adj. (his own, her own, etc.)
inquit: *he says*; indicating direct discourse
Rōmānī: voc. direct address
 27 **optimus (et) maximus:** supply ‘et’
 28 **tamquam:** *as if*; formed from correlative adverbs tam, ‘so,’ and quam, ‘as’
caelestī: abl. sg. 3rd decl. adj. are i-stem
iussī: PPP iubeō
 29 **mulierēs:** i.e. the women once kidnapped
ausae sunt: 3p pf. of semi-deponent audeō
sē...inferre: *that...*; ind. disc.
volantia: pres. pple, neuter pl.
 30 **ut...implōrārent:** *so that...might*; purpose
virisque: *and husbands*
eā rē: *by...*; abl. of cause
mōtī: *having been moved*; i.e. emotionally

5d. The Sabine Women

modo pācem sed etiam cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt; rēgnum quoque cōnsociant atque Rōmam faciunt sēdem imperiī. Multitūdō ita aucta novō nōmine Quirītēs appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs caput Sabīnōrum erat.

Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā dīvīsō, nōmina 35 mulierum raptārum cūriīs dedit. Post aliquot annōs Tātius ab Laurentibus interfectus est. Rōmulus postea sōlus rēgnāvit. Annīs sequentibus bella secunda cum Fidēnātibus Veientibusque, populīs Etrūscīs, gesta sunt.

Dum Rōmulus quōdam tempore exercitum in Campō Mārtiō 40

aliquot: several, 5

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6

campus, -ī m.: plain, field

cōnsociō (1): associate, unite

Curēs, ium m.: Cures, 2

cūria, ae f.: curia, ward, 2

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7

Fidēnātēs, -ium m.: people of Fidenae

Laurentēs, -um m.: Laurentines, 2

Mārtius, -a, -um: of Mars, 4

modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 3

mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 5

Quirītēs, -ium m.: Quirites (Romans), 2

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: seize, snatch, 6

Sabīnus, -a, -um: Sabine, 6

secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 3

sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6

Tātius, -ī m.: Tātius

trīginta: thirty, 3

Veīens, -entis m.: Veientian

31 **nōn modo...sed etiam:** *not only...but also* modo, 'just' or 'only,' is an adverb distinct from the noun modus, modī

duābus: abl. pl., duo, duae, duo is a 1st/2nd decl. adj. whose abl. and dat. forms are -ōbus (masc.) and -ābus (fem.)

32 **faciunt:** *make (x) (y)*; governs a double acc. the first acc. is a dir. obj. while the second is an acc. pred.

Multitūdō: fem. nom. sg.

33 **Quirītēs:** nom. predicate, following appellata est

Curibus: Cures; a single city with a plural name, just as Athens and Los Angeles

quae urbs: *which city...*; a relative adj.

35 **populō...dīvīsō:** abl. abs. with PPP **in:** *into...*; when followed by an acc.

trīgintā: indeclinable trīgintā modifies

cūriās; numbers above trēs are indeclinable

36 **raptārum:** PPP rapiō with mulier-um **cūriīs:** *to...*; dat. ind. obj.; tradition claims that each curia was named after one of the Sabine women kidnapped by the Romans **aliquot:** an indeclinable adj. with annōs **Tātius:** Although not mentioned earlier, Tātius was a Sabine king and was ruling jointly with Romulus.

37 **Annīs sequentibus:** abl. abs. with a pres. pple sequor

38 **secunda:** *favorable*

40 **quōdam tempore:** *at...*; abl. of time when, again, the indefinite pronoun quōdam **Campō Mārtiō:** a plain in the northwest beyond the walls of Rome, where the army trained.

5e. The Sabine Women

recēnsēt, tempestās subitō coōrta eum nimbō operuit. Patrēs quī proximī steterant dīxērunt rēgem sublīmem raptum esse. Deinde ūniversī clāmant: “Salvē, deus deō nāte.” Rōmulus dīcitur postea cuidam cīvī sē ostendisse et eum hīs verbīs allocūtus esse: “Nuntia Rōmānīs deōs velle meam Rōmam caput orbis terrārum esse; 45 proinde rēs militāris colenda est; nam nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere possunt.” Postea nōmen Quirīnus Rōmulō additum est. Rēgnāvit septem et trīgintā annōs. 48

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: bring to, add, 7
alloquor, loquī, -cūtus sum: speak, address, 3
clāmō (1): cry, shout out, 6
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum: cultivate; worship, 3
coōrior, -orīrī, -ortus sum: arise, 2
hūmānus, -a, -um: human, humane, 3
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6
militāris, -e: military, warlike, 2
nimbus, -ī m.: thundercloud, rainstorm
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7
operiō, -īre, -uī, opertum: cover, conceal
ops, opis f.: power; pl. resources, influence, 6
orbis, -is m.: sphere, orb, 2
ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 2

proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5
Quirīnus, -ī m.: Quirinus
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: seize, snatch, 6
recēnsēō, -ēre, -uī: number, reckon, review
resistō, -ere, -stītī: stand still, halt; oppose, 7
salvēō, -ēre: be well, be in good health
septem: seven, 4
stō, stāre, stetī, stātum: stand, 3
subitō: immediately, straightaway, 3
sublīmīs, -e: on high, aloft, uplifted
tempestās, -tātis f.: weather; storm, 2
terra, -ae f.: land, earth, 7
trīginta: thirty, 3
ūniversus, -a, -um: entire, whole, 2

- 41 **coōrta:** pf. dep. pple is often translated 'having Xed,' coōrior
Patrēs: i.e. the senators
 42 **rēgem...raptum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf. rapiō; the senators suggest that the gods raised him up into the sky
 43 **ūniversī:** (*they*) one and all
Salvē: sg. imperative, a common greeting
deus: voc., direct address; the word 'deus' does not assume the -e vocative ending
deō: *from...*; abl. of source
nāte: vocative sg. of nātus, the pf. pple of deponent nascor
 44 **cuidam cīvī:** *to a certain citizen;* ind. obj.
ostendisse: pf. inf. following dicitur
eum: *him;* i.e. the quīdam cīvīs, the lack of a reflexive pronoun is a clear indicator that this pronoun does not refer to the subject
allocūtus esse: pf. dep. inf.: translate as active; the -us ending is nom. sg. because it refers ultimately to the subject Rōmulus

- Nuntia:** sg. imperative, nuntiō
 45 **deōs velle...esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with an irregular pres. inf. of volō, velle; esse is a complementary inf. governed by velle
orbis terrārum: *of the world;* 'of the sphere of lands,' gen. sg.; a common expression for the earth or world
esse: inf. sum
 46 **rēs militāris:** *military affairs;* or 'military science,' nom. sg.
colenda est: *must be...*; 'is (going) to be cultivated;' a passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses necessity
armīs Rōmānīs: dat. obj. of compound verb resistere; a common method of translation is to remove the prefix (here, re-) and make the dat. the object: 'against Roman arms'
 47 **Rōmulō:** dat. ind. obj.
 48 **septem...annōs:** *for...*; acc. of duration of time

6a. Numa Pompilius

Certāmen inde dē rēgnō inter factiōnēs ortum est. Sabīnī rēgem 1
suae factiōnis creārī cupiēbant. Rōmānī veterēs peregrīnum rēgem
recūsābant. Interrēgnō secūtō, senātus imperium gessit. Deinde
plēbs clāmāre coepit multōs dominōs prō ūnō factōs esse.
Optimum igitur vīsum est sine morā rēgem creāre. 5

Habitābat eō tempore Curibus Numa Pompilius, vir iūstissimus
perītusque omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī iūris. Rēgnum eī omnium
cōnsensū dēlātum est. Is urbem novam quae ā Rōmulō armīs
condita erat, iūre lēgibusque firmāvit. Arcum portīs īnstructum
fēcit, quī arcus Iānī appellātus est; apertus bellī index erat, clausus 10

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum: open, disclose, 5
arcus, -ūs m.: arch; bow, 2
certāmen, -minis n.: struggle, contest, 4
clāmō (1): cry, shout out, 6
claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: close, enclose, 6
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5
Curēs, ium m.: Cures, 2
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: offer, give over 6
dīvīnus, -a, -um: divine, 2
dominus, -ī m.: master, 2
factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6
firmō (1): make strong, strengthen, support, 3
habitō (1): inhabit, dwell, live, 2
hūmānus, -a, -um: human, humane, 3
Iānus, -ī m.: Janus

index, indicis m/f: sign, indicator
īnstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum: draw up, arrange
īnterrēgnum, -ī n.: interregnum
iūstus, -a, -um: just
mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, hindrance
Numa, -ae m.: Numa, 6
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 6
peregrīnus, -a, -um: foreign; foreigner, 5
perītus, -a, -um: experienced, 4
Pompilius, -ī m.: Pompilius, 2
porta, -ae f.: gate, 3
recūsō (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5
Sabīnus, -a, -um: Sabine, 6
sine: without, 5
vetus, veteris: old, experienced, 2

- 1 **ortum est:** pf. dep. orior: translate as active
- factiōnēs:** *factions*; The Romans did not have political parties in the modern sense.
- 2 **suae factiōnis:** *of their own...*; gen.
- 3 **īnterrēgnō secūtō:** abl. abs., The pf. pple for a deponent verb, here sequor, is often translated 'having Xed.' An interregnum is a period of time between (inter) kingships (regnum) when a new king is selected.
gessit: *possessed, carried on*; pf. gerō
- 4 **multōs...factōs esse:** *that...had been...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf.; in secondary sequence: translate as plpf. pass.
prō: *in place of...*
- 5 **vīsum est:** *it seemed*; pf. pass. videor, 'seem,' and governing a nom. pred.
- 6 **eō tempore:** *at that...*; abl. of time when
Curibus: *in...*; locative, place where

- iūstissimus:** superlative adj. iūstus
- 7 **perītus:** an adj. that governs a gen. object
 - iūris:** of law; elsewhere 'right' gen. sg. iūs, eī: *to him*; dat. ind. obj.
 - omnium:** subjective gen. pl. modifying consensū
 - 8 **Is:** i.e. Numa
 - 9 **iūre lēgibusque:** abl. of means, here iūre means 'rights' to set it apart from lēgibus
Arcum: this arch was simply a large doorway (two posts and a horizontal lintel) with two gates (portae) in the center
īnstructum: PPP
 - 10 **arcus Iānī:** predicate nom. following appellātus est
(arcus) apertus: *(when) opened, the gate...*; supply the missing nominative 'arcus'
(arcus) clausus: again, supply the noun

6b. Numa Pompilius

pācis. Per omne rēgnum Numae clausus fuit. Pāx cum cīvitātibus
fīnitīmīs societāte ac foederibus facta est.

Rēx inde ad mōrēs populī cultumque deōrum animum convertit.
Ut populī fīdem conciliāret, simulāvit sē cum deā Ēgeriā
congressūs habēre et monitū eius sacra īnstituere sacerdotēsque 15
legere. Annum ad cursum lūnae in duodecim mensēs discrīpsit.
Quōsdam diēs nefāstōs fēcit, per quōs diēs comitia nōn
habēbantur. Virginēs Vestālēs lēgit, quās caerimōniīs quibusdam
sanctās fēcit.

Multa etiam alia ā rēge īnstitutā sunt, rītūs, caerimōniae, 20

caerimōnia, -ae f.: ceremony, rite, 3
claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: close, enclose, 6
comitia, -ōrum n.: assembly, elections
conciliō (1): reconcile, win over, 2
congressus, -ūs m.: meeting, assembly, 2
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsum: turn, reverse, 6
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 3
cursum, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6
discrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī: distribute, divide, 2
duodecim: twelve, 3
Ēgeria, -ae f.: Egeria
fīdēs, eī f.: faith, trust, 7
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5

legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7
lūna, -ae f.: moon, 3
mensis, -is m.: month, 2
monitus, -ūs m.: warning, admonition
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 3
nefāstus, -a, -um: unholy, unhallowed
Numa, -ae m.: Numa, 6
rītūs, -ūs m.: rite, ceremony
sacerdōs, -dōtis m./f.: priest, 4
sanctus, -a, -um: sacred, holy, 2
simulō (1): feign, pretend, make like, 2
societās, -tātis f.: association, alliance, 5
Vestālīs, -e: Vestal, of Vesta

11 **pācis (index erat):** ellipsis; gen. sg., add a
predicate nom. and verb from the previous
clause
fuit: *it was...*; i.e. the arch was...; the PPP
clausus is a predicate adj.
12 **societāte ac foederibus:** abl. of means
13 **mōrēs:** the pl. of mōs may mean 'habits,'
'customs' or 'character'
animum: *his attention*
14 **Ut...conciliāret:** *so that...might...*; a
purpose clause with impf. subj
sē...habēre...īnstituere...legere: *that*
he...; ind. disc. with one acc. subject and
three infinitives; the reflexive sē does not
need to retain the ending '-self' as acc. subj.

15 **congressūs:** acc. pl. 4th decl. noun
eius: *her;* i.e. Egeria's, gen. sg.
sacra: *sacred (rites);* neut. pl.
16 **ad:** *according to...*
17 **fēcit:** *made (x) (y);* governs a double acc.:
(acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
per quōs diēs: *over which days;* relative
adjective
comitia...habēbantur: plural in form but
singular in translation
18 **lēgit:** pf., not 'read' but 'choose' or 'pick'
19 **fēcit:** see note on line 17
20 **rītūs, caerimōniae...:** nom. in apposition
to the pl. subject, multa alia

6c. Numa Pompilius

sacerdōtia. Multitūdō, hīs rēbus ā vī et armīs conversa, rēgis mōrēs imitābātur. Fīnitimī populī cīvitātem Rōmānam tōtam, in cultum deōrum versam, violāre nōlēbant. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, Rōmulus bellō, Numa pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Numa annōs trēs et quadrāgintā rēgnāvit.

25

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6
convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum: turn, reverse, 6
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 3
deinceps: one after another, successively
imitor, -ārī, imitātus sum: imitate, copy, 3
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 3

21 **Multitūdō:** nom. subject
hīs rēbus: *because of...*; abl. of cause
ā: *away from...*; abl. of separation, with an irreg. abl. of vīs
conversa: PPP, convertō
mōrēs: acc. pl., mōs
22 **in:** *toward...*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī: not...wish, be unwilling, 4
Numa, -ae m.: Numa, 6
quadrāgintā: forty, 5
sacerdōtium, -ī n.: priesthood
vertō, -ere, -sī, -rsum: turn, change
violō (1): violate, commit outrage, 4

versam: PPP, vertō
Rōmulus...(et) Numa...auxērunt: equiv. to Rōmulus bellō (cīvitātem auxit et) Numa pace cīvitātem auxit; bellō and pāce are both abl. of means
24 **annōs...quadrāgintā:** *for...*; acc. duration

7a. Tullus Hostilius

Numā mortuō, Tullus Hostīlius rēx creātus est. Hic ferōcior 1
etiam quam Rōmulus fuit. Bellum cum Albānīs primum ortum est.
Albanī et Rōmānī certāmen dē imperiō proeliō paucōrum virōrum
dēcernere cupivērunt.

Forte in utrōque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs, nec aetāte nec 5
vīribus dispārēs, Horātīi et Cūriātīi. Hī Albānī erant, illī Rōmānī.
Trigeminī ad hanc pugnam dēlēctī arma capiunt et in medium inter
duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Duo exercitūs, ērectī ānxiīque, in
spectāculum animōs intendunt. Signō datō, ternī iuvenēs
concurrunt. 10

aciēs, -ēi f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
ānxius, -a, -um: anxious, 2
certāmen, -minis n.: struggle, contest, 4
concurrō, -ere, -currī: assemble, fight with
Cūriātīus, -ī m.: Curiatius, 7
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 3
dispār, dispāris: unequal, unlike, 3
ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectum: raise up, lift, 2

- 1 **Numā mortuō:** Numa having died; abl. abs.; pf. dep. ppl. morior, often translated as 'having Xed'
Hic: *this (one)*
ferōcior: comparative adj.
2 **quam:** *than...*; introducing a clause of comparison
primum: *first, first of all*; adverbial acc.
ortum est: pf. deponent orior
3 **proeliō:** abl. of means. Instead of fighting the entire army, both sides chose to have a few soldiers on each side fight and decide the outcome of the war.
5 **Forte:** *by chance*; abl. as adverb from fors, fortis
utrōque: abl. uterque
nec...nec: *neither...nor*
aetāte...vīribus: *in...in...;* 'in respect to' abl. of respect often qualifies and clarifies

Horātīus, -ī m.: Horatius, 4
intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum: stretch, aim
Numa, -ae m.: Numa, 6
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 4
signum, -ī n.: sign, signal; standard, 6
spectāculum, -ī n.: spectacle, 3
ternī, -ae, -a: three each
trigeminus, -a, -um: triplets, 2
Tullus, -ī m.: Tullus, 2
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each, both, 6

- an adjective.
6 **vīribus:** *strength*; abl. pl. from 3rd decl. vīrēs, the pl. of the irregular vīs, vīs
Horātīi et Cūriātīi: in apposition to frātrēs
Hī...illī: *these...those...*; hī refers to the Cūriātīi, and illī refers to the Horātīi
Albānī: i.e. from Alba Longa; nom. pred.
7 **ad:** *for...*; ad + acc. often expresses purpose
capiunt: i.e. take up
in medium: *into...*
8 **aciēs:** *armies*; or 'battle lines.' This word describes the long line of troops stretching horizontally when an army fights.
ērectī: *having raised themselves*; PPP ērigō, middle in sense; i.e. standing up
9 **animōs:** *their attention*; English prefers sg. while Latin prefers the more specific pl.
signō datō: abl. abs., PPP dō, dare

7b. Tullus Hostilius

Prīmō congressū duo Rōmānī interfectī sunt et trēs Albānī vulnerātī. Eum quī integer fuit trēs Cūriātī circumsistere cōnātī sunt. Cum iam Rōmānus paulum fūgisset, respexit atque vīdit trēs Cūriātōs magnīs intervallis sequentēs. Subitō constitit et in proximum Cūriātium impetum facit; dum exercitus Cūriātīōs 15 obsecrant ut frātrī auxilium ferant, Horātius eum interfēcit.

Tum magnō clāmōre Rōmānī adiuvant mīlitem suum, et ille cōnficere proelium properat. Priusquam cōsecūtus est tertius, Horātius alterum Cūriātium cōnficit. Iamque singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs; Alter integer et ferōx superiōribus 20

adiuvō, -āre, -iuvī, -iutum: help, assist, 4
alter, -era, -erum: other, second, 7
circumsistō, -ere, -stefī: surround
clāmōr, clāmōris m.: cry, shout, 3
congressus, -ūs m.: meeting, assembly, 2
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7
cōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum: follow, go after
constō, -stāre, -stītī: stand firm; is agreed, 5
Cūriātius, -ī m.: Curiatius, 7
Horātius, -ī m.: Horatius, 4
integer, -gra, -grum: untouched, unhurt, 3
intervallum, -ī n.: distance, interval
obsecrō (1): beseech, implore, entreat

paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6
priusquam: before than, sooner than, 2
properō (1): hasten, 3
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5
respicō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look to, 3
secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 3
singulus, -a, -um: one by one, separate, 2
subitō: immediately, straightaway, 3
superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6
supersum, -esse, -fuī: survive, be left over; 2
tertius, -a, -um: third, 2
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

- 11 **prīmō congressū:** *at...*; or ‘in...’ abl. of time when
vulnerātī (sunt): ellipsis; 3p pf. pass.
12 **Eum quī:** *this one who...*; i.e. the sole remaining Roman. *is, ea, id* is often translated as a demonstrative
cōnātī sunt: pf. dep. *cōnor:* translate active
13 **Cum...fūgisset:** plpf. subj., as often, translate the verb in the same tense
paulum: *a little;* adverbial acc.
14 **magnīs intervallis:** *with...*; abl. of manner with adj. often omits the preposition ‘cum’
sequentēs: pres. pple sequor
constitit: pf.; ‘to stand (still)’ often means ‘to stop’
in...: *against..., upon...*
Cūriātīōs: i.e. the two brothers still running at a distance toward the first

- 16 **ut...ferant:** *that...*; an indirect command with pres. subj. *ferō*
17 **magnō clāmōre:** *with...*; abl. of manner
ille: *that one;* i.e. the remaining Horātī
18 **tertius (Cūriātius):** the 3rd brother
19 **alterum:** *the other;* i.e. one of the two
cōnficit: *finishes off;* i.e. kills
supererant: impf. supersum
nec...nec: *neither...nor*
20 **spē...vīribus:** *in (respect to)...in (respect to)...*; abl. of respect often qualifies and clarifies an adjective.
vīribus: abl. pl *vīrēs* (not *vir, virī*), the pl. of the irregular *vīs, vīs*
Alter: *One man...*
superiōribus victōriīs: *because of...*; abl. of cause

7c. Tullus Hostilius

victoriīs erat; alter dēfessus vulnere, animō fractus, in certāmen
vēnit. Nec illud proelium fuit. Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma
Horātius caedit et iacentem spoliat.

23

alter, -era, -erum: other, second, 7
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum: kill, cut down, 4
certāmen, -minis n.: struggle, contest, 4
Cūriātius, -ī m.: Curiatius, 7
dēfessus, -a, -um: wearied, exhausted, 2
frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractum: break, shatter, 3

21 **alter:** *the other man*; ‘alter...alter’
is often translated ‘the one...the other’
vulnere: *because of...*; abl. of cause
animō: *in spirit*; abl. of respect
22 **proelium:** nom. pred.; illud is nom. subj.

Horātius, -ī m.: Horatius, 4
iaceō, -ēre, -uī: lie, lie low, 2
spoliō (1): despoil, plunder, 5
sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 5
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

pred. respectively
22 **sustinentem:** pres. pple
23 **iacentem:** (*him*)...; i.e. Cūriātius, as he
was lying on the ground. Horātius takes the
armor.

8a. Ancus Marcius

Ancus Mārcius, nepōs Numae Pompiliī, quārtus rēx creātus est. 1
Ut Numa in pāce religiōnēs īnstituerat, sīc Ancus caerimōniās
īnstituit, quibus bella posteā indicta sunt. Sacerdōtēs, quibus id
negōtium mandātum est, fētiālēs appellāvit.

Bellīs cum urbibus Latīnōrum gestīs, cīvēs Rōmam trādūxit. 5
Iāniculum, quī collis trāns Tiberim est, cum urbe Ponte Subliciō
coniūnxit. Carcer, quī etiam nunc exstat, sub monte Capitōlīnō
aedificātus est. Imperium usque ad mare prōlātum est, et in ōre
Tiberis Ōstia urbs condita est.

Ancō rēgnante, vir quīdam, nōmine Lucumō, habitābat 10

aedificō (1): make a building, build, 2

Ancus, -ī m.: Ancus, 6

caerimōnia, -ae f.: ceremony, rite, 3

Capitōlinus, -a, -um: Capitoline, 4

carcer, -eris m.: prison, 2

collis, -is m.: hill, 3

condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6

coniungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum: join, 2

exstō (1): stand forth; exist

fētiālis, -e: fetial; diplomatic

habitō (1): inhabit, dwell, live, 2

Iāniculum, -ī n.: Janiculum hill, 3

indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum: declare, appoint 3

Lucumō, Lucumōnis m.: Lucumo, 5

mandō (1): entrust, give, commit, 5

Mārcius, -ī n.: Marcius, Ancus Marcius

mare, maris n.: sea, 6

2 **Ut...īnstituerat:** *As...*; or 'just as,' ut + ind. introducing a clause of comparison

sīc: *so...*; correlative, corresponding to ut

3 **quibus bella...:** *by which*; abl. means

quibus id...: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.

id: *this*; demonstrative adj. is, ea, id

appellāvit: governs a double acc.

5 **Bellis...gestīs:** abl. abs., PPP gerō

cīvēs: i.e. the Latins

Rōmam: *to Rome*; acc. place to which towns, cities, small islands do not use the preposition 'ad' to express place to which

6 **quī:** *which...*; relative

Ponte Subliciō: *with the Pons Sublicius*;

negōtium, ī n.: task, business, occupation, 2

nepōs, nepōtis m.: grandson, decendent, 3

Numa, -ae m.: Numa, 6

nunc: now, at present, 3

ōs, ōris n.: face, mouth, 4

Ōstia, -ae f.: Ostia

Pompilius, -ī m.: Pompilius, 2

pōns, pontis m.: bridge, 7

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry forward, 4

quārtus, -a, -um: fourth, 2

religiō, -nis f.: spiritual practice, rites

sacerdōs, -dōtis m./f.: priest, 4

sīc: thus, in this way, 6

sublicius, -a, -um: on wooden piles

trādūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum: lead over, 3

trāns: across, over, 3

usque: up to, until; all the way, 3

this is the proper name for the wooden bridge that crosses the Tiber river

7 **etiam:** *even*

sub: *at the foot of...*

8 **imperium:** just as *rēgnum*, *imperium* can refer to power or, as here, to the physical extent of the power: 'rule' or 'power'

usque ad: *up to...*, *right up to...*; note that mare is neuter 3rd decl. acc., not abl.

10 **Ancō rēgnante:** abl. abs.

vir quīdam: *a certain man*

nōmine: *by name*; a popular abl. of respect Lucumō is nom. in apposition to vir

8b. Ancus Marcius

Tarquiniīs, quae urbs Etrūsca erat. Pater eius erat Dēmarātus, profugus Corinthius. Lucumō in mātirimōnium Tanaquīlem, mulierem nōbilem, dūxerat. Etrūscī spernēbant Lucumōnem, exulis filium. Tanaquil, quae ferre indignitātem nōn poterat, cōnsilium migrandī Rōmam cēpit. Facile coniugī persuadet.

15

Dum iter faciunt, aquila dīcitur pilleum ab capite Lucumōnis abstulisse et rursus reposuisse. Laeta Tanaquil accēpit id augurium potentiae futūrae. Etrūscī enim caelestium prōdigiorum perītī erant. Postquam Rōmam vēnērunt, Lucumō nōmen L. Tarquinium Prīscum sibi sūmpsit. Ibi paulātim īnsignis factus est dīvitīis

20

aquila, -ae f.: eagle, eagle standard
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: take away, carry away, 5
augurium, -ī n.: augury, divination, 2
caelestis, -e: celestial, heavenly; subs. gods, 2
Corinthius, -a, -um: Corinthian, of Corinth, 2
Dēmarātus, -ī m.: Demaratus
dīvitiae, -ārum f.: riches, wealth
exul, exulis m.: exile, 2
facilis, -e: easy, 4
indignitās, -tātis f.: indignity, outrage, 2
īnsignis, -e: distinguished, noted, 2
laetus, -a, -um: happy, joyful, glad, 4
Lucumō, Lucumōnis m.: Lucumo, 5
mātirimōnium, -īi n.: marriage, 7

migrō (1): travel, migrate, 3
mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 5
paulātim: gradually, little by little, 2
perītus, -a, -um: experienced, 4
pilleus, -ī m.: cap
postquam: after, when, 6
potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 3
Prīscus, -ī m.: Priscus, 3
prōdigium, -ī n.: omen, portent, 3
profugus, -ī m.: a fugitive, refugee, 2
reponō, -ere, -posuī: place or put back, 2
rūrsus: again, backward, back, 2
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum: spurn, reject, 3
sumō, sumere, sumpsī, -mptum: take (up), 5
Tanaquil, -is f.: Tanaquil, 6

- 11 **Tarquiniīs:** *in Tarquiniī;* locative, place where; this Etruscan city is plural in form; Lucumo will take his name from the city and be called Tarquinius, ‘from Tarquiniī’
quae urbs: *which city*
12 **in mātirimōnium...dūxerat:** plpf. dūcō; a common way to express that a male is marrying a female
13 **Lucumōnem:** acc. sg. Lucumo
14 **ferre:** *to endure, to bear;* irregular inf. ferō
15 **migrandī:** *of...;* gen. sg., a gerund (-ing) is a verbal noun (stem + nd + 2nd decl. sg. endings). In English, it is commonly formed with the ending -ing: e.g. Running is fun.
Rōmam: *to...;* acc. place to which
Facile: *easily;* irregular adv.
coniugī: dat. ind. obj.
17 **Laeta:** *happily, joyously;* adj. in the nom. often may be translated as adverbs

- abstulisse, reposuisse:** pf. inf. auferō, reponō
18 **futūrae:** *future;* ‘going to be,’ fut. act. pple of sum, esse modifying potentiae
enim: *for...;* postpositive, translate first in the sentence
perītī: nom. predicate governing a gen. obj.
19 **Rōmam:** *to...;* acc. place to which
L. Tarquinium Prīscum: *Lucius Tarquinius Priscus;* the cognomen ‘Priscus’ means ‘elder’ and was added much later to distinguish this Tarquinius from his descendent, the 7th and last king of Rome, L. Tarquinius Superbus
20 **sibi:** *for himself;* dat. of interest
factus est: *he was made;* īnsignis is nom. pred.
dīvitīis: *in...;* abl. of respect with īnsignis

8c. Ancus Marcius

aliisque rebus. Postrēmō in amīcitiā rēgis receptus tūtor
līberōrum rēgis testāmentō īnstitūtus est. Ancus annōs quattuor et
vīgintī rēgnāvit.

23

amīcitiā, -ae f.: friendship, 5
Ancus, -ī m.: Ancus, 6
postrēmus, -a, -um: last, 3
quattuor: four, 5

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take, 4
testāmentum, -ī n.: a will
tūtor, -ōris m.: guardian; defender, 2
vīgintī: twenty, 6

21 **aliisque rebus:** *in...*; abl. of respect
in amīcitiā...receptus: for this participial
phrase, assume Tarquinius as the subject
tūtor: predicate nom. after īnstitūtus est

22 **īnstitūtus est:** *was appointed*
annōs...vīgintī: *for...*; acc. of duration of
time

9a. Tarquinius Priscus

Iam filiī Ancī prope adultī erant. Sed Tarquinius ipse rēx creārī 1
cupiēbat. Is prīmus palam rēgnum petiit, memorāns officia prīvāta
ac pūblica et benignitātem in omnēs. Magnō cōnsensū populus
Rōmānus eum rēgnāre iussit.

Tarquinius, Latīnīs bellō victīs, lūdōs magnificōs fēcit. Tum 5
prīmum locus circō, quī Maximus dīcitur, dēsīgnātus est. Lūdī
sollemnēs mānsērunt, Rōmānī aut Magnī appellātī. Magna quoque
opera ā rēge incepta sunt, ut populus nōn quiētior in pāce quam in
bellō esset. Mūrō lapideō urbem cingere parāvit, et loca circā
forum aliāsque convallēs cloācīs siccāvit. Fundāmenta aedis Iovis 10
in Capitōliō iēcit.

adolescō, -ere, adolevī, adultum: grow up, 3
aedis, -is f.: temple, pl. house, 2
Ancus, -ī m.: Ancus, 6
benignitās, -tātis f.: kindness
Capitōlium, -ī n.: Capitolium, 5
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum: surround, gird
circā: about, around, 4
circus, -ī m.: racetrack, circuit, 3
cloāca, -ae f.: sewer, 2
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5
convallis, -is m.: valley, deep lowland
dēsīgnō (1): mark out, assign
fundāmentum, -ī n.: foundation
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum: throw, cast, 2
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 5

Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 4
lapideus, -a, -um: of stone
lūdus, -ī m.: game, sport; school, 6
magnificus, -a, -um: splendid, magnificent
maneō, -ēre, mansī: stay, wait, wait for, 7
memorō (1): recall, mention
mūrus, -ī m.: wall, rampart, 3
officium, -īi n.: duty, 4
palam: openly, publicly, 3
prīvō (1): deprive of, rob, strip from, 3
prope: nearly almost; near, 5
quiētus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed, 4
siccō (1): dry, 2
sollemnis, -e: customary; solemn

- 1 **prope:** *nearly*; here as an adv.
rēx: predicate nom. after pass. inf. creārī
2 **Is prīmus:** *he first...*
memorāns: nom. sg. pple
3 **in...:** *toward..., upon...*
magnō cōnsensū: *with...*; abl. of manner
5 **Latīnīs...victīs:** abl. abs., PPP vincō
fēcit: *produced, created*
6 **prīmum:** adverbial acc.
circō: *for...*; dat. of purpose
Maximus: i.e. the Circus Maximus
dīcitur: *is called*; + nom. pred.
7 **Rōmānī aut Magnī:** i.e. the Roman Games
or Great Games; nom. pred. after the PPP
appellātī: PPP modifying lūdī
8 **opera:** i.e. building projects
ut...esset: *so that... might...*; purpose +

- impf. subj. of sum, esse
quam: *than...*; adverbial conjunction
introducing a clause of comparison
9 **Mūrō lapideō:** abl. of means
10 **forum:** i.e. the Forum Rōmānum in a
lowland at the base of the Capitoline and
Palatine hills; Rome would later have
numerous fora, 'markets,' in the city
cloācīs: abl. means; These were likely open
ditches that were later covered. The use of
cloācae was likely adapted from irrigation
ditches employed by farmers.
Iovis: gen. Jupiter (Iovis, Iovī, Iovem, Iove)
11 **in:** *on...*; the Capitoline hill has two peaks:
one peak holds the temple of Jupiter;
the other peak, the temple of Juno Moneta
iēcit: *laid*; 'threw down'

9b. Tarquinius Priscus

Eō ferē tempore in rēgiā prōdigium mīrabile fuit. Caput puerī 12
dormientis, cui Servius Tullius fuit nōmen, multōrum in cōspectū
ārsit. Servī, quī aquam ad restinguendam flammam ferēbant, ab
rēginā retentī sunt. Mox cum puer ē somnō excitātus esset, flamma 15
abiit. Tum, abductō in sēcrētum virō, Tanaquil, “Vidēsne tū hunc
puerum,” inquit, “quem tam humilī cultū ēducāmus? Lūmen
profectō portendit eum aliquando nōbīs praesidiō futūrum esse.
Proinde artibus liberālibus ērudiendus est.” Ingenium iuvenis vērē
rēgium erat. Tarquinius igitur eī filiam suam dēspondit. 20

abducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: lead/take away
abeō, -īre, -ī: go away, depart
aliquandō: sometimes, at some time, 3
ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum: be on fire, burn
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7
conspectus, -ūs f.: look, sight, view
cultus, -ūs m.: culture, refinement, 3
dēspondō, -ere, -spondī: betroth, 3
dormiō, -īre, -īvī: sleep
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: lead out, draw
ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: educate, instruct, 2
excitō (1): rouse, stir up; awaken, 6
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7
flamma, -ae f.: flame, fire, torch, love, 3
humilis, -e: on the ground, low; humble, 2
ingenium, -ī n.: intellect, talent; character, 5
liberālis, -e: of or befitting a free man, 2
lūmen, lūminis n.: light

mīrābilis, -e: amazing, wonderful
mox: soon, 4
nōs: we, us, 3
portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum: foretell
praesidium, -ī n.: garrison, protection, 5
prōdigium, -ī n.: omen, portent, 3
profectō: surely, of course, indeed
proinde: then, therefore, consequently, 2
rēginā, -ae f.: queen, 2
rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6
restinguō, -ere, restinxī: put out, quench, 2
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold back, 3
sēcrētus, -a, -um: secret, private
servus, -ī m.: slave, 6
somnus, -ī m.: sleep, 2
Tanaquil, -is f.: Tanaquil, 6
tū: you, 6
Tullius, -ī m.: Tullius, 5

- 12 **Eō...tempore:** *at...*; abl. of time when
in rēgiā: *in the royal house;* rēgius-a-um is
an adj, but rēgia, -ae f. is a noun
13 **dormientis:** (*while*)...; pres. pple
cui...fuit: *to whom...was;* dat. of possession
with sum may be translated one of three
ways: (1) ‘to whom... was,’ (2) ‘whose...
was,’ or (3) ‘who had...’
ārsit: *burst into flames;* inceptive pf. tense
14 **ad restinguendam flammam:** *for putting
out the flame;* ‘for the flame (going) to be
put out,’ ad + noun + gerundive (fut. pass.
pple) expresses purpose. Perform a ‘gerund-
gerundive flip’ and translate the noun +

- gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + object
15 **Cum...excitātus esset:** plpf. pass. subj.
16 **abductō...virō:** abl. abs., PPP abducō;
Translate the noun virō, ‘husband,’ first.
vidēs-ne: -ne is an enclitic introducing a
yes/no question, leave -ne untranslated
17 **tam humilī cultū:** *from...*; abl. of source;
humilī is a 3rd decl. i-stem adj., abl. sg.
18 **eum...futūrum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc.
with a fut. inf. of sum, esse
nōbīs praesidiō: *as protection for us;* or
‘serves as protection for us;’ a double dative
construction (dat. of interest + dat. of
purpose)

9c. Tarquinius Priscus

Etsī Ancī filiī duo antea īrātī fuerant, quod peregrīnus Rōmae
rēgnābat, tum maior erat indignātiō, quoniam servō iam rēgnum
patēre vidēbātur. Rēgem igitur interficere rēgnumque occupāre
constituērunt. Ex pāstōribus duo ferōcissimī ad facinus dēlēctī in
vestibulō rēgiae speciē rixae in sē omnēs appāritōrēs rēgiōs 25
convertērunt. Inde vocātī ad rēgem dīcere in vicem iussī sunt. Ūnus
rem expōnit. Dum intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āvertit, alter ēlātam
secūrim in caput rēgis dēiēcit; relictō in vulnere tēlō, ambō forās
fugiunt. Tarquinium moribundum appāritōrēs excipiunt; illōs
fugientēs līctōrēs comprehendunt. 30

alter, -era, -erum: other, second, 7
ambō: both, two together, 3
Ancus, -ī m.: Ancus, 6
appāritōr, -ōris m.: servant, 3
āvertō, -ere, -vertī: turn aside, turn away, 3
comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -prehensum: grasp,
seize, 5
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsum: turn, reverse, 6
dēiēcō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw/cast down 4
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 3
ēfferō, -ere, -tulī, -lātum: carry out, lift, 2
etsī: even if, although, though, 3
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take out,
receive, 5
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: set forth, 5
facinus, -noris n.: deed, action; crime, 3
forās: out of doors
indignātiō, -tiōnis f.: indignity, outrage, 4
intentus, -a, -um: attentive, intent, 3

21 **Etsī:** *although...*; ‘even if,’ the clause is concessive
Ancī: gen. sg.
fuerant: 3p plpf. sum
quod: *because...*; causal quod clause
Rōmae: *at...*; locative, place where
22 **servō:** *for...*; dat of interest
23 **vidēbātur:** *seemed*; common translation for the passive *videor*
24 **ad:** *for...*; + acc. expressing purpose
25 **speciē rixae:** *under the pretext of a quarrel*; ‘with the appearance of a quarrel’

īrātus, -a, -um: angry, 6
līctor, līctōris m.: lictor (bodyguard), 5
maior, maius: greater, larger; older, 4
moribundus, -a, -um: dying
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 5
pāstor, -is m.: shepherd, 4
pateō, -ēre, -uī: lie open, extend, 2
peregrīnus, -a, -um: foreign; foreigner, 5
quoniam: since now, seeing that
rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6
rixa, -ae f.: quarrel, dispute
secūris, -is f.: axe
servus, -ī m.: slave, 6
species, -ei f.: sight, look, appearance, 3
tēlum, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6
vestibulum, -ī n.: entrance, vestibule, 2
vicem: in turn
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

in sē: *to them*; ‘into themselves’
26 **vocātī:** modifying pāstōrēs, the missing subject of the sentence, PPP vocō
in vicem: *in turn*; i.e. one after the other
27 **in eum:** *upon him*; i.e. on the one talking
tōtus: *entirely*; an adj. in the nom. may be translated as an adv.
ēlātum: PPP from ēfferō
28 **relictō...tēlō:** abl. abs., PPP relinquō
30 **līctōrēs:** nom. pl., illōs fugientēs is acc. pl. the lictors are the bodyguards of the king

9d. Tarquinius Priscus

Magnus sequitur populū tumultus, inter quem Tanaquil claudī rēgiā iubet. Serviō inde celeriter ad sē vocātō, auxilium ōrāvīt. “Tuum est rēgnum,” inquit, “Servī, sī vir es, nōn eōrum quī aliēnīs manibus pessimum facinus fēcērunt. Ērige tē deōsque ducēs sequere, quī dīvīnā flammā hoc caput clārum futūrum esse portendērunt. Nōlī perturbārī quod peregrīnus es. Etiam nōs peregrīnī rēgnāvimus. Sī propter subitam rem cōnsilia fingere nōn potes, mea tamen cōnsilia sequere.”

Cum iam clāmor multitudinis vix sustinērī posset, Tanaquil ex superiōre parte rēgiae populū ita allocūta est: “Cum vulnus rēgis 40

aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5
alloquor, loquī, -cūtus sum: speak, address, 3
celeriter: swiftly, quickly, 5
clāmor, clāmōris m.: cry, shout, 3
claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: close, enclose, 6
dīvīnus, -a, -um: divine, 2
ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectum: raise up, lift, 2
facinus, -noris n.: deed, action; crime, 3
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum: make up, imagine
flamma, -ae f.: flame, fire, torch, love, 3
manus, -ūs f.: hand; group, 7
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī: not...wish, be unwilling, 4
nōs: we, us, 3

- 31 **sequitur:** 3s pres. dep. sequor; translate in the active voice
inter quem: *in the midst of whom*; ‘among whom’
claudī: pass. inf.
32 **Serviō...vocātō:** abl. abs., his name is Servius, which means ‘born of a slave’
ad sē: This reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the main clause, Tanaquil
33 **Servī:** *Servius*; voc. direct address; nom. forms with -ius become -ī in the vocative
nōn eōrum: *not theirs*; This predicate gen. is parallel to the predicate tuum
aliēnīs manibus: abl. means, the sons of Ancus did not perform courageous actions but instead hired assassins to kill Tarquin
34 **Ērige:** sg. imperative
ducēs: *as guides, as leaders*; in apposition
35 **sequere:** sg. dep. imperative, sequor

ōrō (1): pray, entreat, beseech, 3
peregrīnus, -a, -um: foreign; foreigner, 5
perturbō (1): disturb, throw into confusion, 3
pessimus, -a, -um: worst, very bad
portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum: foretell
servus, -ī m.: slave, 6
subitus, -a, -um: sudden
superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6
sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 5
Tanaquil, -is f.: Tanaquil, 6
tumultus, -ūs m.: uproar, tumult, confusion
tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 2
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

- hoc caput...futūrum esse:** *that...;* ind. disc. with fut. inf. sum.
clārum: acc. predicate following futūrum esse. Since clārus means ‘bright’ or ‘distinguished,’ Tanaquil invokes both meanings and suggests that the bright flames foretell a time when Servius’ life will be clārus, ‘famous’ and ‘distinguished.’
36 **Nōlī perturbārī:** *don’t be troubled*; ‘be unwilling to be troubled,’ neg. imperative formed by the irreg. imperative nōlō + inf.
quod: *because...;* causal quod clause
38 **potes:** 2s pres. possum
sequere: sg. dep. imperative, sequor
39 **Cum...posset:** *when...;* impf. subj. possum
40 **superiōre parte:** *upper floor*
Cum...: *although...;* the tamen that follows in the main clause indicates that this cum introduces a concessive clause

9e. Tarquinius Priscus

grave sit, iam tamen ad sē redit; brevī tempore rēgem ipsum vidēbitis. Interim vult Servium Tullium rem pūblicam administrāre.” Itaque Servius per aliquot diēs, cum Tarquinius iam mortuus esset, suās opēs firmāvit. Tum dēmum mors rēgis nuntiāta est. Servius, praesidiō firmō mūnītus, prīmus iniussū populī 35 voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit.

administrō (1): manage, direct; help, 3

aliquot: several, 5

brevis, -e: short, brief, 5

dēmum: at length, finally

firmō (1): make strong, strengthen, support, 3

iniussū: without orders, 3

interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 4

31 **grave:** neuter nom. sg., 3rd decl. adj.

sit: 3s pres. subj. of sum in a cum clause; translate as you would an indicative

tamen: as often, indicates that the preceding cum-clause is concessive in sense

redit: 3s pres. redeō

brevī tempore: *in...*; abl. time when

32 **vult:** 3s pres., irregular volō, velle

rem pūblicam: *the republic*; i.e. public affairs

33 **per:** *over*

mors, mortis f.: death, 6

mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum: fortify, build, 5

nuntius, -iī m.: messenger; message, news, 3

ops, opis f.: power; pl. resources, influence, 6

praesidium, -iī n.: garrison, protection, 5

Tullius, -ī m.: Tullius, 5

voluntās, -tātis f.: will, wish, permission, 2

aliquot: indeclinable adj.

cum...mortuus esset: *since...*; causal in sense, plpf. deponent subj. morior

34 **opēs:** acc. pl. from ops, opis

35 **Servius...prīmus:** i.e. Servius was the first to....

35 **mūnītus:** PPP mūniō

iniussū...voluntāte: *without...(but) with...*; abl. means

36 **patrum:** i.e. senators; gen. pl.

10a. Servius Tullius

Servius primum cēsum instituit et populum in classēs prō 1
opibus discrīpsit. Ex cēsusū posteā officia bellī pācisque tribūta
sunt. Ad multitudīnem crescentem duo collēs, Quirīnālis
Vīminālisque, ad urbem additī sunt. Imperium quoque hōc cōnsiliō
auctum est. Fānum erat nōbile Diānae Ephesiae, quod commūniter 5
ā cīvitātibus Asiae factum esse dīcēbatur. Servius per principēs
Latīnōrum, eō cōnsēnsū cīvitātum Asiaticārum vehementer
laudātō, tandem populīs Latīnīs persuāsit ut Rōmae cum populō
Rōmānō fānum Diānae facerent. Ea erat cōfessiō caput rērum
Rōmam esse, dē quō totiēns certātum erat. 10

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: bring to, add, 7
Asiaticus, -a, -um: Asian, of Asia
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6
cēsus, -ūs m.: census, registration, 3
certō (1): contend, strive, 2
classis, -is f.: fleet, 4
collis, -is m.: hill, 3
commūnis, -e: common, 2
cōfessiō, -iōnis f.: confession
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5
crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, increase, 4
Diāna, -ae f.: Diana, 2

- 1 **prō opibus:** *according to wealth*; abl. ops
2 **ad:** *for...*; expressing purpose
3 **Quirīnālis Vīminālisque:** nom. sg. in
apposition to duo collēs; two of the seven
hills of Rome
4 **hōc cōnsiliō:** *by this plan*
5 **Fānum erat nōbile:** *there was...*; nōbile is
3rd decl. neut. sg. with nom. subject fānum
Diānae Ephesiae: *for...*; dat. of interest
quod...: relative clause
commūniter: adv.
6 **factum esse:** *to...*; pf. pass. inf. faciō
7 **eō cōnsēnsū...laudātō:** *this consensus...*;

discrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī: distribute, divide, 2
Ephesius, -a, -um: of Ephesus, Ephesian
fānum, -ī n.: shrine, temple, 2
laudō (1): praise, glorify, 5
officiū, -iī n.: duty, obligation, 4
ops, opis f.: power; pl. resources, influence, 6
Quirīnālis, -e: Quirinal Hill
tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6
totiēns: so often, so many times, 3
tribō, -ere, -uī, tribūtum: assign, bestow, 3
vehementer: vehemently, violently, 2
Vīminālis, -e: Viminal

- abl. abs.; eō is a demonstrative adj.
8 **populīs Latīnīs:** dat. ind. object of verb
ut...facerent: *that...*; indirect command
with impf. subj. in secondary sequence
Rōmae: *at Rome*; locative, place where
9 **Diānae:** *for...*; dat. of interest
Ea: *this...*; a demonstrative
caput...esse: (*namely*) *that...*; ind. disc.
in apposition to cōfessiō
10 **dē:** *about...*; relative clause
certātum erat: *it had...*; i.e. ‘they had
contested,’ an impersonal use of the plpf.
pass. that may often be translated as active

10b. Servius Tullius

Lūcius Tarquinius, Prīscī filius, interdum querēbātur quod Servius iniussū populī rēgnāret. Servius igitur agrum prius captum ex hostibus virītim dīvīsit; hōc modō voluntātem plebis conciliāvit. Populus deinde maximō cōnsēnsū eum rēgnāre iussit.

Rēx duās filiās Lūciō atque Arruntī Tarquinīs, Priscī filiīs, in 15
mātrimōnium dederat. Mōrēs hōrum disparēs erant. Nam Arrūns
Tarquinius mītis erat, L. Tarquinius ferōx et cupidus rēgnī. Duae
Tulliae item dispārēs erant. Forte Arrūns ferōcem in mātrimōnium
dūxerat. Similitūdō celeriter L. Tarquinium et ferōcem Tulliam
contrahit. Cum prope continuīs caedibus domōs vacuās fēcissent, 20

Arrūns, Arruntis m.: Arruns, 4
caedēs, -is f.: slaughter, killing, 4
celeriter: swiftly, quickly, 5
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5
continuus, -a, -um: continuous, successive, 3
contrahō, -ere, -trāxī: draw together, 2
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 3
dispār, dispāris: unequal, unlike, 3
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7
iniussū: without orders, 3
interdum: sometimes, from time to time
item: also, likewise, in like manner, 2
Lūcius, -ī m.: Lucius, 3

11 **Prīscī:** *of (Lucius Tarquinius) Priscus; the 5th king of Rome*
13 **quod...rēgnāret:** *on the grounds that...; 'because,' causal quod clause; quod + subj. suggests an alleged cause from a character's --rather than narrator's--point of view: 'because (as he claims) Servius ruled...'*
12 **agrum:** *farmland; not 'field'*
prius: comparative adv., prior
13 **hōc modō:** *in...; abl. of manner*
15 **Lūciō...Arruntī:** *dat. indirect object*
Tarquīnīs: *the Tarquins; dat. referring to Lucius Tarquinius and Arruns Tarquinius*
Prīscī: see linex 11
16 **mōrēs:** *characters; elsewhere 'habits,'*

mātrimōnium, -iī n.: marriage, 7
mītis, -e: mild, gentle
modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 6
mōs, mōris m.: custom, manner, law, 3
prior, prius: before, first. previous, sooner, 5
Prīscus, -ī m.: Priscus, 3
prope: nearly almost; near, 5
queror, -ī, questus sum: complain, lament, 3
similitūdō, -inis f.: likeness, resemblance
Tullia, -ae f.: Tullia, 4
vacuus, -a, -um: empty, fear, vacant
virītim: man by man, to each man
voluntās, -tātis f.: will, wish, permission, 2

L. Tarquinius (erat): add linking verb
17 **rēgnī:** *for...; objective gen.*
Duae Tulliae: *The two Tullias; Daughters are all named from the feminine form of the family name: hence, Servius Tullius has two daughters named Tullia.*
18 **Forte:** *by chance; abl. as adverb, from fors, fortis*
19 **ferōcem:** the fierce one of the two Tullias
20 **Cum...fēcissent:** *after...; plpf. subj., the verb governs a double accusative: direct obj. and acc. predicate*
domōs: fem. acc. pl.
prope: *nearly; adverb*

10c. Servius Tullius

iunguntur nūptiīs. Paulātim inde mulier coniugem ad caedem Servī excitat. Itaque Tarquinius prius omnibus rēbus cīvēs et maximē patrēs conciliāvit.

Postrēmō, ubi iam tempus agendī vīsum est, stīpātus armātīs in forum irrūpit. Inde in rēgiā sēde prō Cūriā sedēns patrēs in Cūriam 25 per praecōnem ad rēgem Tarquinium vocārī iussit. Ibi incūsābat rēgem, quod rēgnum muliebrī dōnō occupāvisset; querēbātur item dē cōnsiliīs populāribus, dē agrō plēbī dīvisō, dē cēnsū īnstitūtō.

Dum loquitur, Servius intervēnit et ā vestibulō Cūriae magnā 30 vōce, “Quid tibi vīs,” inquit, “Tarquinī? Quā audāciā tū, mē vīvō,

armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5
audācia, -ae f.: boldness, audacity, 2
caedēs, -is f.: slaughter, killing, 4
cēnsus, -ūs m.: census, registration, 3
Cūria, -ae f.: senate house, Curia, 8
dīvidō, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7
dōnum, -ī n.: gift, 4
excitō (1): rouse, stir up; awaken, 6
incūsō (1): accuse, complain of, 3
intervenīō -ire -vēnī: come upon, intervene
irrumpō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 2
item: also, likewise, in like manner, 2
iungō, -ere, iunxī, -iunctum: join, 2
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum: speak, address
muliebris, -e: womanly, of a woman
mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 5

- 21 **nūptiīs:** abl. of means
22 **prius:** *first*; comparative adv., prior
omnibus rēbus: *in...*; abl. of respect
maximē: *especially*; or ‘in particular’ are usual translations for this superlative adv.
24 **ubi:** *when*
agendī: *for...*; gen. sg. of a gerund (-ing)
armātīs: *with armed (men)*; substantive (adj. as noun) formed from the PPP
25 **irrūpit:** the fierce L. Tarquinius is subj.
in rēgiā sēde: i.e. on the throne
prō: *in front of...*; abl. of place where
patrēs: i.e. senators
iussit: 3s pf. iubeō
27 **quod...occupāvisset:** *on the grounds that...*; ‘because,’ causal quod clause with plpf. subj.; quod + subj. suggests an alleged

nūptiae, -ārum f.: marriage, wedding
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 5
paulātim: gradually, little by little, 2
populāris, -e: of the people, popular, 4
postrēmus, -a, -um: last, 3
praecō, praecōnis m.: herald
prior, prius: before, first. previous, sooner, 5
queror, -ī, questus sum: complain, lament, 3
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī: sit, sit down; set, 7
sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6
servus, -ī m.: slave, 6
stīpō (1): crowd together, stuff, pack
tū: you, 6
vestibulum, -ī n.: entrance, vestibule, 2
vīvus, -a, -um: alive, living, 3
vōx, vōcis f.: voice, 7

- cause from a character’s point of view
muliebrī dōnō: abl. of means, 3rd decl. i-stem adj.
28 **agrō:** *farmland*
plēbī: *among...*; or ‘for...’ dat. of interest
29 **loquitur:** 3s pres. dep., loquor
ā: *from...*; Servius speaks from the entranceway
magnā vōce: *with...*; dat. of manner
30 **tibi:** *for yourself*; dat. of interest
vīs: 2s pres. volō, velle; either ‘what do you want?’ or ‘what do you mean?’
Tarquini: *Tarquinius*; voc. direct address; nom. with -ius become -ī in the vocative
Quā audāciā: *by what...*; interrogative adj.
mē vīvō: abl. abs.; subject and predicate in the abl. Supply ‘being’ in the translation.

10d. Servius Tullius

vocāre patrēs aut in sēde meā cōnsīdere ausus es?” Tarquinius ferōcīter respondit sē sēdem patris suī tenēre, sē rēgnī hērēdem esse. Tum mediū arripit Servium, ēlātumque ē Cūriā per gradūs dēicit; inde in Cūriam redit. Appāritōrēs rēgis fugiunt. Rēx ipse ā servīs Tarquiniī interficitur. Tullia, carpentō in forum invecta, 35 coniugem ēvocāvit rēgemque prīma appellāvit. Dum domum redit, dīcitur patrem in viā iacentem invēnisse et per corpus carpentum ēgisse. Hic locus posteā “scelerātus” vocātus est. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā. 39

appāritōr, -ōris m.: servant, 3
arripio, -ere, -uī, -reptum: snatch, grab, 2
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 5
carpentum, -ī n.: carriage
consīdō, -ere, -sēdī: sit, settle, encamp
Cūria, -ae f.: senate house, Curia, 8
dēicio, -ere, -icī, -iectum: throw/cast down 4
ēfferō, -ere, -tulī, -lātum: carry out, lift, 2
ēvocō (1): call out, challenge
gradus, -ūs m.: step, pace; stairs
hērēs, hērēdis m./f.: heir, heiress, 2
iaceō, -ēre, -uī: lie, lie low, 2

invehō, -ere, -vexī, -ctum: convey/ride into, 3
invenio, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: come upon, find, 5
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6
quadrāgintā: forty, 5
quattuor: four, 5
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -nsum: answer, reply, 4
scelerātus, -a, -um: wicked, profane, guilty 1
sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6
servus, -ī m.: slave, 6
Tullia, -ae f.: Tullia, 4
Tullius, -ī m.: Tullius, 5

31 **ausus es:** 2s pf. of semi-deponent audeō: translate as active

32 **sē...tenēre...(et) sē...esse:** *that he...(and) that he...;* ind. disc. The lack of a conjunction (asyndeton) suggests that Tarquinius was speaking quickly and listing one charge after another.

suī: gen. sg. suus, reflexive possessive adj.
33 **mediū Servium:** *the waist of Servius;* ‘the middle of Servius’

ēlātum...dēicit: In cases where English prefers to have two main verbs, e.g. carried off and threw down, Latin often prefers to make the first action a PPP (pf. pass. pple) and the second action the finite verb.

ēlātum is PPP of efferō and modifies the missing acc. direct object, i.e. ‘servum’
per gradūs: *over...*

34 **redit:** pres. redeō

ā...: *by...;* abl. of agent

36 **(eum) appellāvit:** *called (him)...*; this verb governs a double acc.; supply eum
prīma: i.e. she was the first to...

domum: *(to) home;* acc. place to which

37 **dīcitur:** *(she) is said to...*

invēnisse...ēgisse: pf. inf. invenio, agō

38 **“scelerātus”:** The road was called the Via Scelerata, the ‘Wicked Way’

39 **annōs...quadrāgintā:** *for...;* acc. of duration of time

11a. Tarquinius Superbus

Inde L. Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, cui propter facta cognōmen 1
“Superbus” datum est. Prīncipēs patrum, quī Servium dīlēxerant,
interfēcit. Suum corpus armātīs circumsaepsit. Iūdicia capitālium
rērū sine cōnsiliīs per sē sōlus exercēbat. Ita poterat occīdere, in
exsilium agere, bonīs spoliāre omnēs quōs cupiēbat. 5

Etsī rēgēs superiōrēs senātum dē omnibus rēbus cōnsulere solitī
erant, Tarquinius domesticīs cōnsiliīs rem pūblicam administrāvit.
Bellum, pācem, foedera, societātēs per sē ipse fēcit. Latīnōrum
gentem sibi maximē conciliābat. Octāviō Mamiliō Tusculānō—is
longē nōbilissimus Latīnōrum erat—fīliam in mātirimōnium dat. 10

administrō (1): manage, direct; help, 3
armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5
capitālis, -e: capital, of the head
circumsaepiō -ire -saepsī: hedge around
cognōmen, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6
consulō, -ere, -uī, consultum: consult, 3
diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum: love, esteem
domesticus, -a, -um: of a house
etsī: even if, although, though, 3
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, exercitum: exercise, train
exsilium, -iī n.: exile, 5
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5
iūdicium, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial, 3

longē: far, 4
Mamilius, -ī m.: Mamilius
mātirimōnium, -iī n.: marriage, 7
occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: kill, cut down, 7
Octāvius, -iī m.: Octavius
sine: without, 5
societās, -tātis f.: association, alliance, 5
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum: be accustomed, 4
spoliō (1): despoil, plunder, 5
superbus, -a, -um: arrogant, proud, haughty 3
superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6
Tusculānus, -a, -um: of Tusculum

- 1 **cui**: *to whom*; dat. ind. obj.
cognōmen: the third name of a Roman male
“**Superbus**”: thus, the full name Lucius
Tarquinius Superbus, whom we often call
in translation ‘Tarquin the Proud’
2 **patrum**: i.e. of the senators, gen. pl.
suum corpus: neuter acc. sg.
3 **armātīs**: *with armed men*
iūdicia capitālium rērū: *the judgments
in capital cases*; i.e. legal decisions in
cases involving life or death
4 **per sē**: *by himself*
occīdere...agere...spoliāre: all three
complementary inf. of poterat (possum)
govern omnēs as their object; supply the
missing conjunction ‘et’ (asyndeton)
between the infinitives
5 **bonīs**: *from...*; abl. separation; neut. bona
is a substantive (adj. functioning as a noun)

- and denotes goods, property, or possessions
6 **Etsī**: *even if*; introducing a concessive
clause
superiōrēs: *previous*; comparative adj.
solitī erant: *had been accustomed*; plpf. of
semi-deponent soleō
7 **domesticīs cōnsiliīs**: i.e. from the house or
court of the king
rem pūblicam: *public affairs*; i.e. the
government
8 **per sē**: *by himself*
ipse: *(he) himself*; intensive
9 **maximē**: *especially, in particular*; a
common translation for the superlative
Octāviō...Tusculānō: Octavius Mamilius
Tusculanus; dat. ind. obj.
is...erat: parenthetical clause,, is refers to
Octavius

11b. Tarquinius Superbus

Cum iam magna Tarquiniī auctōritās inter Latīnōrum principēs esset, concilium in certam diem convocāvit. Conveniunt frequentēs p̄mā lūce. Ipse Tarquinius diem quidem servāvit, sed paulō ante sōlis occāsū vēnit. Turnus Herdonius Arīcīnius ferōciter absentem Tarquiniū accūsāverat. Dīxit Tarquiniū patientiam 15 Latīnōrum temptāre et affectāre imperium in eōs. Rēx, hōc cognitō, quia p̄o imperiō palam Turnum interficere nōn poterat, cōnfestim statuit falsō crīmine eum opprimere. Proximā igitur nocte auctōre Tarquiniō quīdam Arīcīnī, Turnō inimīcī, in dēversōriū eius magnum numerum gladiōrum clam intulērunt. 20

absēns, absentis (1): absent, 3
accūsō (1): accuse, blame, reprimand, 3
affectō (1): strive for, aim at
Arīcīnus, -a, -um: of Aricia
auctor, auctōris m.: agent, creator, 3
auctōritās, -tātis f.: authority, 4
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6
clam: secretly, in secret
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 4
concilium, -iī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 3
cōnfestim: at once, immediately, 3
conveniō -īre -vēnī: come together, 6
convocō (1): call together, 4
crīmen, crīminis n.: crime, 2
dēversōriū, -ī n.: lodging-place, inn, 3
falsus, -a, -um: false
frequēns, frequentis: crowded

11 **cum...esset**: *since...*; causal in sense; impf. subj. sum; magna is a predicate placed early in the line for emphasis
12 **in certam diem**: *for...*
13 **p̄mā lūce**: *at...*; abl. time when, a common expression for the dawn
quidem: *in fact*; an adv.
servāvit: *kept*; i.e. fulfilled the appointment
paulō: *a little*; 'by a little,' dat. of degree of difference modifying the preposition ante
14 **ferōciter**: adv. from 3rd decl. adj. ferōx
16 **Tarquiniū...temptāre...affectāre**: *that...*; ind. disc.
in: among

gladius, -ī m.: sword, 6
Herdonius, -ī m.: Herdonius
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum: bring in, wage, 5
inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6
lūx, lūcis f.: light, 2
numerus, -ī m.: number, multitude, 2
occāsus, occāsūs m.: falling, setting
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: oppress, overwhelm, 5
palam: openly, publicly, 3
patientia, -ae f.: endurance, patience
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5
quia: because, 2
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
temptō (1): attempt, test; attack, 2

Hōc cognitō: abl. abl., hōc refers to the accusation made in Tarquinius' absence
17 **p̄o**: *in return for...*
18 **statuit**: *decided*; 'took a stand'
falsō: *false*
eum: i.e. Turnus
Proximā nocte: *on...*; abl. of time when
19 **auctōre Tarquiniō**: *Tarquinius (being) the agent*; abl. absolute, both subject and predicate are abl., supply pple 'being'
quīdam Arīcīnī: *certain Aricini, certain inhabitants of Aricia*; an indefinite pronoun
Turnō: *to...*; dat. of special adj. inimīcī
20 **intulērunt**: 3s pf. inferō

11c. Tarquinius Superbus

Tarquinius paulō ante lūcem ad sē principēs Latīnōrum vocāvit certiōrēsque dē gladiīs cēlātīs fēcit: “Cognōvī,” inquit, “Turnum cupere Latīnōrum solum imperium tenēre et iam necem omnium parāre.” Dūxit deinde eōs ad dēversōrium. Ubi gladii ex omnibus locīs dēversōrii prōlātī sunt, manifesta vīsa est rēs, Turnusque in 25 catēnīs coniectus est.

Cōnfestim concilium Latīnōrum convocātur. Ibi magna indignātiō oritur, gladiīs in mediō positīs. Itaque Turnus, indictā causā, in aquam Ferentīnam mersus est. Rēx, auctōritāte inter Latīnōs ita auctā, cum eīs renōvāvit foedus quod ā Tullō rēge antea 30

auctōritās, -tātis f.: authority, 4
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6
catēna, -ae f.: chain, fetter, shackle, 2
cēlō (1): hide, conceal
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 4
concilium, -iī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 3
cōnfestim: at once, immediately, 3
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw, hurl, 5
convocō (1): call together, 4
dēversōrium, -i n.: lodging-place, inn, 3
Ferentīna, -ae f.: Ferentina

- 21 **paulō:** *a little*; ‘by a little,’ dat. of degree of difference; lūcem refers to daybreak
22 **certiōrēs...fēcit:** *made (them) more certain*; i.e. informed them, a common idiom in Julius Caesar’s work
Turnum...tenēre...parāre: *that...;* ind. disc., one acc. subj.
cēlātīs: PPP, cēlō
23 **solum:** modifying Turnum
Latīnōrum: modifying imperium
24 **Ubi:** *when*
25 **dēversōrii:** *of (Turnus’) lodging, of*

foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5
gladius, -i m.: sword, 6
indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum: declare, appoint 3
indignātiō, -tiōnis f.: indignity, outrage, 4
lūx, lūcis f.: light, 2
manifestus, -a, -um: clear, evident
mergō, -ere, -rsī, mersum: sink, drown
nex, necis f.: death, violent death, murder, 3
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry forward, 4
renovō (1): renew, make new, 2
Tullus, -i m.: Tullus, 2

- (Turnus’) room at the inn*
prōlātī sunt: 3p pf. pass. prōferō
vīsa est: *seemed*; ‘was seen,’ ‘seem’ is a common translation for the passive videor
28 **oritur:** 3s pres. dep. orior: translate as active
gladiīs...positīs: abl. abs.
indictā causā: *(his) legal case having been declared*; abl. abs., PPP indicō
29 **auctōritāte...auctā:** abl. abs.
30 **quod:** *which...;* relative clause

11d. Tarquinius Superbus

factum erat. Latīnī nōn repugnāvērunt, quamquam in eō foedere rēs Rōmāna superior erat. Mors enim Turnī docēbat potentiam Tarquiniī ac perīculum eōrum quī resistēbant.

Tarquinius, quamquam iniūstus in pāce rēx fuit, ducem bellī tamen nōn prāvum sē praebuit. Is prīmus cum Volscīs bellum 35 gessit et magnam praedam cēpit. In aliō bellō cum Gabiōs, vīcīnam urbem, vī capere nōn posset, fraude ac dolō per filium suum Sex. Tarquinium aggressus est.

Sextus enim, filius Tarquiniī, quī minimus ex tribus erat, trānsiit Gabiōs, crūdēlitātem intolerābilem patris vehementer quaerēns 40

aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum: go to, attack, 3
crūdēlitās, -tātis f.: cruelty, crudeness, 3
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum: teach, tell, 4
dolus, -i m.: trick, deceit, 2
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5
fraus, fraudis f.: deceit, fraud, trickery, 3
Gabiū, -ōrum m.: Gabii, 6
iniūstus, -a, -um: unjust
intolerābilis, -e: unbearable, intolerable
minimus, -a, -um: very little
mors, mortis f.: death, 6
potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 3

praebēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: present, put forth, 4
praeda, -ae f.: plunder, spoils; cattle, 7
prāvus, -a, -um: crooked, dishonest, bad
quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum: seek, ask, inquire, 6
repugnō (1): fight against, oppose, resist
resistō, -ere, -stīti: stand still, halt; oppose, 7
superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6
vehementer: vehemently, violently, 2
vīcīnus, -a, -um: neighboring, 3
Volscī, -ōrum m.: Volscians, Volsci, 4

31 **factum erat:** plpf. pass. faciō
eō: *this*; a demonstrative adj.
32 **rēs Rōmāna:** *the Roman state*
33 **...nōn prāvum:** *not a bad leader*;
i.e. a good leader;
35 **praebuit:** *showed (x) (y)*; governs a double acc., sē and ducem
Is prīmus: i.e. he was the first to...
gessit: pf. gerō
36 **Cum...posset:** *since...*; causal in sense, impf. subj. possum
Gabiōs: *Gabii*; a single city with a plural name, just as Athens or Los Angeles

37 **vī:** irregular abl. of means, vīs
38 **aggressus est:** pf. deponent; supply a missing object eam, 'it.'
39 **enim:** *for...*; postpositive: translate first in the sentence
minimus (nātū): *youngest*; 'least (by birth),' the abl. of respect nātū, 'by birth,' is often missing but understood
tribus: abl. of trēs; There were three sons.
trānsiit: pf. trānseō
40 **Gabiōs:** *to Gabii*; acc. place to which
quaerēns: nom. sg. pres. pple quaerō

11e. Tarquinius Superbus

atque adiuuāre Gabīnōs aduersus eum pollicēns. Benignē ā Gabīnīs exceptus in cōnsilia pūblica adhibētur, et dēnique dux legitur. Proelia parua inter Rōmam Gabiōsque facta sunt, quibus Gabīnī superiōrēs erant. Gabīnī Sex. Tarquinium dōnō deōrum sibi missum esse ducem crēdidērunt.

45

Inde Sextus ūnum ex suīs Rōmam mīsīt, quī mandāta patris peteret. Rēx nihil vōce respondit, sed tamquam rem dēliberāns in hortum aedium trānsiit, sequente nūntiō filiī; ibi inambulāns tacitus summa papāverum capita baculō dēiēcīt. Nūntius, dēfessus interrogandō exspectandōque respōnsum, redit Gabiōs remque

50

adhibeō, -ēre, -buī: apply, admit, employ
adiuuō, -āre, -iuuī, -iutum: help, assist, 4
aedis, -is f.: temple, pl. house, 2
baculum, -ī n.: staff, 3
benignus, -a, -um: kind, kindly, 3
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7
dēfessus, -a, -um: wearied, exhausted, 2
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw/cast down 4
dēliberō (1): ponder, meditate, 2
dēnique: lastly, finally, 7
dōnum, -ī n.: gift, 3
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take out; receive, welcome, 5
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
Gabī, -ōrum m.: Gabii (town), 6

Gabīnus, -a, -um: (inhabitants) of Gabii, 6
hortus, -ī m.: garden
inambulō (1): walk back and forth
interrogō (1): ask, question
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7
mandō (1): entrust, give, commit, 5
nuntius, -ī m.: messenger; message, news, 3
papāver, -is n.: a poppy
paruus, -a, -um: small, 4
polliceor, -cērī, -citus sum: promise, offer, 4
respōnsum, -ī n.: response, reply, 3
superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6
tacitus, -a, -um: silent, still
tamquam: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6
vōx, vōcis f.: voice, 7

- 41 **adiuuāre...pollicēns:** a single participial phrase; the inf. is governed by the pres. pple
Gabīnōs: *the inhabitants of Gabii*
aduersus eum: i.e. against the king
42 **exceptus:** *welcomed*; In Livy, Sextus wins sympathy by claiming to have been abused
dux: *as...*; a predicative nom.
legitur: *is chosen*
43 **facta sunt:** The king and Sextus secretly planned these battles so that Sextus could increase his standing among the Gabii.
quibus: *in...*; abl. of respect or place where
44 **Sex(tum) Tarquinium...missum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf.
dōnō...sibi: *as a gift...to them*; 'serves as a gift for them,' a double dative (dat. of purpose and dat. of interest)
ducem: *as a leader*
46 **ex suīs:** *from his own (men)*; ellipsis

- Rōmam:** accusative, place to which
quī...peteret: *who would...*; a relative clause of purpose with impf. subj.
mandāta: *orders*; 'things ordered,' PPP
47 **vōce:** *by voice, by utterance*; i.e. outloud
48 **aedium:** gen. pl., but translate in the sg.
trānsiit: pf. trānsēō
sequente nūntiō: abl. abs. with pres. pple
tacitus: *silently*; nom. adj. as adv.
49 **summa capita:** i.e. the poppy flowers at the top of the stems of the plants
dēiēcīt: *cast off*; i.e. cut off
50 **interrogandō exspectandōque:** *by...*; abl. of means with two gerunds (-ing) + obj.
Gabiōs: *to...*; accusative, place to which

11f. Tarquinius Superbus

mīram refert. Sextus intellēxit quid pater fierī vellet. Prīncipēs igitur cīvītātis variīs crīminibus necāvit. Rēs Gabīna, ita spoliāta cōnsiliō auxiliōque, rēgī Rōmānō sine certāmine gravī trāditur.

Gabiīs receptīs, Tarquinius ad negōtia urbāna animum convertit. Prīmum templum in monte Tarpeiō aedificāre tōtumque montem 55 Iovī dēdicāre constituit. Hoc templum pater iam anteā vōverat. Ad hoc opus fabrīs Etrūscīs et operāriīs ex plēbe Rōmānā ūsus est. Plēbs etiam ad alia opera trāducta forōs in Circō fēcit Cloācamque Maximam sub terram ēgit, quam etiam nunc vidēmus. Multī colōnī Signiam Circeiōsque missī sunt quī praesidia urbī essent. 60

aedificō (1): make a building, build, 2
certāmen, -minis n.: struggle, contest, 4
Circeiī, -ōrum m.: Circeii (town)
circus, -ī m.: racetrack, circuit, 3
cloāca, -ae f.: sewer, 2
colōnus, -ī m.: settler, colonist, 2
convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsum: turn, reverse, 6
crīmen, crīminis n.: crime, 2
dēdicō (1): dedicate, consecrate
faber, fabrī m.: engineer
fiō, fierī, factus sum: be made, occur, 3
forus, -ī m.: benches, seats, bleachers
Gabiī, -ōrum m.: Gabii, 6
Gabinus, -a, -um: of Gabii, 6
intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum: realize, understand, 2
Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 4
mīrus, -a, -um: amazing, wonderful, strange 3
necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6

negōtium, ī n.: task, business, occupation, 2
nunc: now, at present, 3
operārius, -ī m.: laborer, worker
praesidium, -ī n.: garrison, protection, 5
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take, 4
referō, -ferre, -tulī: report, bring back, 7
sine: without, 5
Signia, -ae f.: Signia (town)
spoliō (1): despoil, plunder, 5
Tarpēius, -a, -um: Tarpeian
templum, -ī n.: temple, 5
terra, -ae f.: land, earth, 7
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7
trādūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum: lead over, 3
urbānus, -a, -um: of a city, urban, 2
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum: use, employ, enjoy, 5
varius, -a, -um: various, 3
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum: vow, swear, 2

51 **refert:** *reports*; 3s pres. referō is irregular and lacks a vowel before the 3s ending
quid...vellet: *what...*; ind. question with impf. subj. volō, velle
fierī: inf. of fiō, an irregular verb often used as the passive of faciō
52 **Rēs Gabīna:** *The state of Gabii*
53 **rēgī Rōmānō:** dat. ind. obj.
gravī: abl. sg., 3rd decl. i-stem adj. has an '-ī' where most nouns have an '-e.'
54 **Gabiīs receptīs:** abl. abs., PPP recipiō
animum: *his attention*
55 **prīmum:** *first of all*; adverbial acc.
in monte Tarpeiō: A steep cliff face on the side of the Capitoline hill.

56 **Iovī:** *to...*; ind. obj., dat. sg. Iuppiter
Ad: *for...*; + acc. expressing purpose
57 **ūsus est:** pf. dep. ūtor governs an abl. object (abl. of means)
58 **etiam:** *also*
trāducta: PPP modifying fem. plēbs
59 **Cloācamque:** yes, they called this sewer the 'Greatest Sewer'
59 **ēgit:** *dug*; 'drove'
60 **Signiam Circeiōsque:** *to Signia and Circeii*; accusative, place to which
quī...essent: *which would be...*; relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. sums
urbī: *for...*; dat. of interest

11g. Tarquinius Superbus

Dum haec aguntur, portentum terribile vīsum est; anguis ex columnā lignēā ēlāpsus terrōrem fugamque in rēgiā fēcit atque ipsiūs rēgis pectus ānxiīs cūrīs implēvit. Itaque Tarquinius filiōs, Titum et Arruntem, Delphōs ad clārissimum in terrīs ōrāculum mittere statuit.

65

Comes eīs additus est L. Iūnius Brūtus, ex Tarquiniā, sorōre rēgis, nātus. Cognōmen eius hōc modō parātum erat; rēx eōs principēs cīvitātis quōs timēbat interficere solēbat, in quibus frātre Brūtī interfēcit. Hic, ut crūdēlitātem rēgis vītāret, consultō

69

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: bring to, add, 7
anguis, -is m./f.: serpent, snake
ānxiūs, -a, -um: anxious, 2
Arrūns, Arruntis m.: Arruns, 4
cognōmen, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6
columna, -ae f.: pillar, column
comes, -itis m. f.: companion, comrade, 3
consultō: deliberately, purposefully
crūdēlitās, -tātis f.: cruelty, crudeness, 3
cūra, -ae f.: care, concern, worry, 5
Delphī, -ōrum m.: Delphi, oracle of Apollo, 3
ēlābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum: slip/slide away, 2
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 2
impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, implētum: fill, 3
Iūnius, -ī m.: Junius, 2

ligneus, -a, -um: of wood
modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 6
ōrāculum, -ī n.: oracle, 3
pectus, pectoris n.: chest; heart
portentum, -ī n.: omen, portent
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum: be accustomed, 4
soror, sorōris f.: sister, 2
Tarquīnia, -ae f.: Tarquinia
terra, -ae f.: land, earth, 7
terribilis, -e: terrible, dreadful
terror, terrōris m.: terror, fright, 4
timeō, -ēre, -uī: fear, dread, 2
Titus, -ī m.: Titus
vītō (1): avoid, evade, shun, 3

61 **haec:** *these (things)*; neuter pl. hic
62 **ēlāpsus:** A pf. deponent pple is usually translated 'having Xed.'
In rēgiā: *in the palace*
63 **ipsiūs rēgis:** the -iūs ending is a common gen. sg. ending for pronouns.
64 **Delphōs:** *to.;* acc., place to which; the singular town Delphi is pl. in name
65 **statuit:** *decided;* 'took a stand'
66 **comes:** nom. sg.

eīs: dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id; i.e. Titus and Arruns
67 **nātus:** PPP nascor
eius: gen. sg. from is, ea, id
hōc modō: *in this way;* abl. of manner
eōs principēs: *those.;*; demonstrative adj.
68 **in quibus:** *among.;*; relative clause
69 **Hic:** *this one;* i.e. Brutus
ut...vītāret: *so that...might;* purpose, impf. subj.

11h. Tarquinius Superbus

stultitiam imitātus bona sua rēgem spoliāre passus est neque 70
cognōmen Brūtī recūsāvit.

Is tum igitur ab Tarquiniīs ductus est Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius
quam comes. Tulit tamen dōnum Apollinī aureum baculum
inclūsum in baculō corneō, tamquam effigiem ingenī suī.
Postquam iuvenēs Delphōs vēnērunt patrisque mandāta 75
cōnfēcērunt, statuērunt quaerere ex ōrāculō ad quem eōrum
rēgnum esset ventūrum.

Vōx reddita est: “Imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī
vestrum prīmus, ō iuvenēs, mātrem ōsculābitur. Tarquiniī, Brūtum 79

Apollo, -inis m.: Apollo
aureus, -a, -um: gold, golden, 2
baculum, -ī n.: staff, 3
cognōmen, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6
comes, -itis m. f.: companion, comrade, 3
corneus, -a, -um: of cornel wood, 2
Delphī, -ōrum m.: Delphi, oracle of Apollo, 3
dōnum, -ī n.: gift, 4
effigiēs, -ēī f.: likeness, effigy, statue
imitor, -ārī, imitātus sum: imitate, copy, 3
inclūdō, -ere, -dī, -clūsum: shut up, enclose
ingenium, -ī n.: intellect, talent; character, 5
lūdicrum, -ī n.: game, sport, exhibition
mandō (1): entrust, give, commit, 5

70 **stultitiam imitātus:** Brutus pretends that he is mentally slow and therefore is not a threat to the king. The nickname ‘Brutus’ means dull or dull-witted.

bona: The neuter pl. bona is a substantive and denotes goods, property, or possessions.

passus est: *allowed*; ‘suffered,’ pf. dep. patior

72 **Tarquiniīs:** i.e. by the two sons

Delphōs: *to...*, accusative, place to which a single town but the name is plural

lūdibrium: in apposition to is (Brutus)

vērius: comparative adverb: ‘more Xly’

73 **quam:** *than...*; an adv. introducing a clause of comparison (verb is often missing)

Tulit: pf. from irregular ferō, ferre, tuli
aureum: in apposition to dōnum

74 **inclūsum:** PPP inclūdō

tamquam: *as if...*; ‘so as,’ from

ōrāculum, -ī n.: oracle, 3

ōsculor, -ārī, ōsculātus sum: kiss, 3

patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer; allow (+ inf), 7

postquam: after, when, 6

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum: seek, ask, inquire, 6

recūsō (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5

reddō -ere -didī -ditum: give back, render, 5

spoliō (1): despoil, plunder, 5

stultitia, -ae f.: foolishness, folly

tamquam: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6

vōs: you, you all, 5

vōx, vōcis f.: voice, 7

correlatives tam, ‘so,’ and quam, ‘as’

ingenī suī: objective gen.

75 **Delphōs:** see line 72

mandāta: *orders*; ‘things ordered,’ PPP

76 **statuērunt:** *they decided*; ‘took a stand’

ad quem...ventūrum esset: ind. question

with subj.; here a periphrastic fut. subj. (fut.

pple + impf. subj. of sum) which one can

translate “was going to ...” or ‘would come’

eōrum: *of them*; i.e. the two sons; this

partitive gen. modifies quem

78 **quī...:** (*he*) *who...*; the subject of the main

clause is missing and must be supplied

Rōmae: *at Rome*; locative, or possibly a

gen. sg.

79 **vestrum:** *of you, among you*; partitive

gen. pl. of vōs (not the possessive vester)

ō iuvenēs: vocative, direct address

Tarquiniī: nom. subj.; i.e. the two sons of

Tarquin

11i. Tarquinius Superbus

contemnentēs, ipsī inter sē iūs mātris ōsculandae Rōmae sortī 80
permittunt. Brūtus, quī aliō modō ōrāculum interpretātus erat,
cecidit terramque ōsculātus est, scīlicet quod ea commūnis māter
est omnium mortālium. Rediērunt inde iuvenēs Rōmam. 84

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum: fall, 4

commūnis, -e: common, 2

contemnō, -ere, -temp̄sī: despise, scorn

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus: translate, interpret

modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 6

mortālis, -e: mortal

ōrāculum, -ī n.: oracle, 3

ōsculor, -ārī, ōsculātus sum: kiss, 3

permittō -ere -mīsī: send, entrust, permit, 3

scīlicet: of course, no doubt

sors, sortis f.: lot, casting of lots, 3

terra, -ae f.: land, earth, 7

80 **ipsī:** intensive modifying nom. Tarquiniī

iūs: *the right*; or 'privilege'

mātris ōsculandae: *of...*; 'of the mother (going) to be kissed,' Perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this gen. noun + gerundive into a gerund (-ing) + dir. obj.

81 **Rōmae:** *at Rome*; locative, place where

sortī: *to fate*; dat. ind. obj., your lot is life

is your fate

aliō modō: *in...*; abl. of manner

quod: *because...*; causal quod clause

83 **ea:** *this (one)*; the subject, referring to terra; commūnis māter is a predicate

84 **rediērunt:** 3p pf. redeō

Rōmam: *to...*; acc. place to which

12a. The Banishment of Tarquinius

Paulō post Rōmānī, quī iam dūdum superbiam Tarquiniī rēgis 1
 atque filiōrum aegrē ferēbant, ita scelere quōdam Sex. Tarquiniī
 concitātī sunt ut rēgiam familiam in exsilium pellere statuerent.

Tarquinius Collātīnus, sorōre Tarquiniī Superbī nātus, in
 contuberniō iuvenum rēgiōrum Ardeae erat; cum forte in liberīore 5
 conviviō coniugem suam ūnus quisque laudāret, placuit experīrī.
 Itaque equīs Rōmam petunt. Rēgiās nurūs in conviviō vel lūxū
 dēprehendunt. Et inde Collātiam petunt. Lucretiam, uxōrem
 Collātīnī, inter ancillās in lanificiō offendunt; itaque ea
 pudīcissima iūdicātur. Ad quam corrupendam Sex. Tarquinius 10

aegrē: with difficulty, wearily
ancilla, -ae f.: attendant, handmaid
Ardea, -ae f.: Ardea, 4
Collātia, -ae f.: Collatia, 2
Collātīnus, -ī m.: Collatinus, 5
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 3
contubernium, -ī n.: group of tent-mates
convivium, -ī n.: banquet, feast, 2
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: ruin, 4
dēprehendō, -ere, -sī: seize upon, discover, 2
dūdum: a short time ago; just now, once
equus, -ī m.: horse, 3
experior, -īrī, expertus sum: experience; test, prove, 2
exsilium, -ī n.: exile, 5
familia, -ae f.: family, household, 2
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 3
lanificium, -ī n.: wool-making

laudō (1): praise, glorify, 5
liber, libera, liberum: free, 4
Lucretia, -iae f.: Lucretia, 3
lūxus, -ūs m.: luxury, splendor, 2
nurus, -ūs f.: young married woman, daughter-in-law
offendō, -ere, -dī, -sum: meet; offend, 2
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6
placet: it is pleasing, it is resolved, 2
pudicus, -a, -um: modest, chaste, virtuous
quisque, cuiusque: each one, 3
rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6
scelus, -eris n.: wickedness, villainy, crime, 2
soror, sorōris f.: sister, 2
superbia, -ae f.: arrogance, pride, 2
superbus, -a, -um: arrogant, proud, haughty 3
 vel: or, either...or, 2

- 1 **Paulō:** *a little*; ‘by a little,’ abl. of degree of difference modifying post, ‘afterwards’
- iam dūdum:** *long before*; often as one word: iamdūdum
- 2 **ferēbant:** ferō can mean ‘carry’ or ‘endure’
- ita...concitātī sunt:** *were so stirred up...*; ita modifies the main verb
- scelere quōdam:** *by a certain crime*; abl. of means; indefinite pronoun quisdam
- 3 **ut...statuerent:** *that...*; a result clause with impf. subj. (translate as impf.)
- 4 **sorore:** *from...*; abl. of source
- nātus:** pf. pple from nascor
- 5 **rēgiōrum:** *royal*; modifies gen. pl. iuvenum
- Ardeae:** *at Ardea*; locative, place where
- cum forte:** *when by chance*; ablative as adv.

- liberīore:** *too free*; comparative can suggest excess: ‘more free (than usual);’ the tent-mates have had too much to drink.
- 6 **ūnus quisque:** subject
 - placuit:** *it was...*; impersonal, pf. placet
 - 7 **equīs:** *on horseback*; abl. means
 - Rōmam:** accusative, place to which
 - 8 **Collātiam:** accusative, place to which
 - 9 **ea:** *she*; i.e. Lucretia
 - 10 **pudīcissima:** predicate nom. a superlative following iūdicātur
- Ad quam corrupendam:** *for...*; ‘for this one (going) to be corrupted;’ do a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the pronoun and gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc. object; translate the connective quam as ‘this one’

12b. The Banishment of Tarquinius

nocte Collātiam rediit et iūre propinquitātis in domum Collātīnī
vēnit et in cubiculum Lucretīae irrūpit, pudīcītam expugnāvit.

Illa posterō diē advocātīs patre et coniuge rem hīs verbīs
exposuit: “Vestīgia virī aliēnī, Collātīne, in lectō sunt tuō; cēterum
corpus est tantum violātum, animus īnsons; mors testis erit. Sed 15
date dexterās fidemque haud impūne adulterō fore. Sex. est
Tarquinius, quī hostis prō hospite priōre nocte vī armātus mihi
sibique, sī vōs virī estis, pestiferum hinc abstulit gaudium.”

Dant ōrdine omnēs fidem; cōsolantur aegram animī āvertendō
noxam ab coāctā in auctōrem dēlictī; mentem peccāre, nōn corpus, 20

adulter, -ī m.: adulterer
advocō (1): summon, call to
aeger, -gra, -grum: sick, weary
aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5
armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5
auctor, auctōris m.: agent, creator, 3
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: take away, carry away, 5
āvertō, -ere, -vertī: turn aside, turn away, 3
cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 4
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
Collātia, -ae f.: Collatia, 2
Collātīnus, -ī m.: Collatinus, 5
cōsolor, -ārī, -ātus sum: console, comfort
cubiculum, -ī n.: bedroom
dēlictum, -ī n.: crime, fault
dexter, -ra, -rum: right (hand); favorable, 3
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: set forth, 5
expugnō (1): take by storm, capture, 2
fidēs, eī f.: faith, trust, 7
gaudium, -ī n.: gladness, joy, 2
haud: by no means, not at all, 4

hinc: from here, hence, 3
hospes, -pitis m.: host, guest, guest-friend
impūne: with impunity
īnsons, -sontis: innocent, guiltless
irrumpō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 2
lectus, -ī m.: couch, bed, 2
Lucretīa, -iae f.: Lucretia, 3
mēns, mentis f.: mind, intent, purpose, 2
mors, mortis f.: death, 6
noxa, -ae f.: harm, injury, 2
ōrdō, ōrdinis m.: arrangement, order, rank, 3
peccō (1): do wrong, transgress, offend, 2
pestiferus, -a, -um: plague-bearing
posterus, -a, -um: following, next, 2
prior, prius: before, first, previous, sooner, 5
propinquitās, -tātis f.: kinship, closeness
pudīcītia, -ae f.: modesty, chastity
testis, -is m/f.: witness
tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 2
vēstīgium, -ī n.: footstep; footprint, track, 2
violō (1): violate, commit outrage, 4
vōs: you, you all, 5

- 11 **nocte:** *at...*; abl. of time when
iūre: *by right of...*; abl. of cause
Collātīnī: gen. sg., Sextus' cousin
12 **(et) pudīcītam:** asyndeton, the lack of 'et'
suggests abruptness or surprise
13 **posterō diē:** *on...*; abl. of time when
advocātīs patre et coniuge: abl. abs.
14 **cēterum:** *but;* 'as for the rest,' adv. acc.
15 **tantum:** *only, alone;* adv. (adverbial acc.)
est...violātum: pf. pass.
erit: fut. sum, esse
16 **date:** pl. imperative, dō, dare

- dexterās:** *pledges;* given with right hands
haud...fore: *that it would be...*; ind. disc.;
fore is equiv. to futūrum esse (fut. inf. sum);
adulterō is dat. of interest: 'for...'
17 **hostis prō...** *as a enemy in place of...*
priōre nocte: *at...*; abl. of time when
mihi sibique: *from me and (later) from
himself,* dat. of compound verb abstulit
19 **āvertendō:** *by...*; gerund (-ing), abl. means
ōrdine: *in order;* abl. of manner
20 **ab coāctā:** *from the one forced;* PPP
mentem peccāre...corpus: *that...;* ind. disc.

12c. The Banishment of Tarquinius

et unde cōnsilium āfuerit, culpam abesse. “Vōs,” inquit, “vīderitis quid illī dēbētur. Ego mē etsī peccātō absolvō, supplicio nōn liberō; nec ūlla deinde impudīca Lucrētia exemplō vīvet.” Sē cultrō, quem veste texerat, occīdit. Illī in exitium rēgum coniuērāvērunt eōrumque exsilio necem Lucrētia vindicāvērunt. 25

Tum p̄imum vērum ingenium Brūtī apertum est. Eō enim duce populus iūrāvīt sē nec Tarquinium nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae passūrum esse. Brūtus inde in castra profectus est, ubi exercitus Rōmānus Ardeam, caput Rutulōrum, obsidēbat. Tulliam rēgīnam domō profugientem omnēs virī mulierēsque execrātī sunt. 30

absolvō, -ere, -solvī: set free, acquit
absum, -esse, āfui: be away, be absent, 5
aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertum: open, disclose, 5
Ardea, -ae f.: Ardea, 4
coniuērō (1): swear together, conspire, 4
culpa, -ae m.: blame, fault; cause
culter, cultrī m.: knife
dēbēō, -ēre, -uī, dēbitum: owe, ought, 3
etsī: even if, although, though, 3
execror, -ārī, execrātus sum: curse
exemplum, -ī n.: example, 3
exitium, -ī n.: destruction, 2
exsilium, -iī n.: exile, 5
impudīcus, -a, -um: shameless; lewd
ingenium, -ī n.: intellect, talent; character, 5
iūrō (1): swear, 3
liberō (1): free, liberate, 5
Lucrētia, -iae f.: Lucretia, 3

mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 5
nex, necis f.: death, violent death, murder, 3
obsidēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum: kill, cut down, 7
patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer; allow (+ inf), 7
peccō (1): do wrong, transgress, offend, 2
quisquam, quiddam: any one, any thing, 2
rēgīna, -ae f.: queen, 2
Rutulus, -ī m.: Rutulians, 3
supplicium, -iī n.: punishment, supplication, 5
tegō, -ere, texī, tectum: cover, conceal, 2
Tullia, -ae f.: Tullia, 4
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 4
unde: whence, from which source, 3
vestis, -is f.: clothing, 3
vindicō (1): avenge, punish
vīvō, -ere, vixī, vīctum: live, 4
vōs: you, you all, 5

- 21 **unde...āfuerit:** *where...*; relative clause pf. subj. absum; subjunctive of subordinate verb in ind. disc.: translate as pf. indicative
culpam abesse: *that...*; ind. disc.
Vīderitis: *May you see...*; ‘have seen’ optative subj. (subj. of wish); 2p pf. subj.
 22 **illī:** *to that one;* dat. ind. obj., i.e. Sextus
etsī...absolvō: *although...*; ‘even if,’ begins a concessive clause
peccātō: *from the wrong, from blame;* abl. separation
supplicio: *from...*; abl. of separation
 23 **ūlla impudīca (fēmina):** supply a subject
vīvet: fut.
sē: note the emphatic position; Lucretia is still the subject

- 24 **Illī:** *those men*
in: *upon*
rēgum: gen. pl. rēx
 25 **eōrum:** *of those;* i.e. of the royal family
 26 **p̄imum:** *for the first time;* adv. acc.
Eō...duce: *this one (being) leader;* abl. abs. The subject and predicate are in the abl. Supply the missing pple ‘being.’
 27 **sē...passūrum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf. of patior, ‘allow;’ in secondary seq. translate with ‘would’ rather than ‘will’
nec...nec: *neither...nor*
quemquam: acc. sg. quisquam
 28 **Rōmae:** *at...*; locative, place where
profectus est: 3s pf. dep. proficiscor
 30 **domō:** *from...*; place from which

12d. The Banishment of Tarquinius

Ubi nuntii hārum rērum in castra perlātī sunt, rēx Rōmam perrēxit. Brūtus adventum rēgis sēnsit flexitque viam. Ita eōdem ferē tempore dīversīs itineribus Brūtus Ardeam, Tarquinius Rōmam vērunt. Hic portās clausās invēnit; Brūtum liberātorem urbis laeta castra accēpērunt exāctīque sunt liberī rēgis; duo patrem 35 secūtī exulēs advērunt Caere, quae urbs Etrūsca erat; Sextus Tarquinius Gabiōs, tamquam in suum rēgnum, profectus ab ultōribus veterum iniūriarum quās ipse intulerat interfectus est.

L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque vīgintī. Rēgnum Rōmae annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā dūraverat. Duo cōsulēs 40 inde creātī sunt, L. Iūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus.

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī: come to, approach, 4
adventus, -ūs m.: arrival, approach, 2
Ardea, -ae f.: Ardea, 4
Caere n.: Caere
claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: close, enclose, 6
Collātīnus, -ī m.: Collatinus, 5
dīversus, -a, -um: different, contrary, 3
ducentī, -ae, -a: two hundred, 2
dūrō (1): harden, last, endure, 2
exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive out; spend, 3
exul, exulis m.: exile, 2
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7
flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum: turn, bend, 3
Gabiī, -ōrum m.: Gabii (town), 6
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring in, wage, 5
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 5
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come upon,

find, 5
Iūnius, -ī m.: Junius, 2
laetus, -a, -um: happy, joyful, glad, 4
liberō (1): free, liberate, 5
nuntius, -ī m.: messenger; message, news, 3
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry, endure, 4
pergō -ere -rēxī -rectum: proceed, continue
porta, -ae f.: gate, 3
quadrāgintā: forty, 5
quīnque: five, 4
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēsum: feel, perceive, 2
superbus, -a, -um: arrogant, proud, haughty 3
tamquam: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6
ultor, ultōris m.: avenger
vetus, veteris: old, experienced, 2
vīgintī: twenty, 6

31 **Rōmam:** *to...*; accusative, place to which
 32 **perrēxit:** pf. pergō (per-regō)
eōdem...tempore: *at...*; abl. of time when,
 eōdem is abl. of īdem, eadem, idem
 33 **itineribus:** *routes;* means
Ardeam, Rōmam: *to...*; place to which
 35 **laeta castra:** *happily the camp...*; An adj.
 in the nom. may be translated as an adv.
 36 **secūtī:** pf. dep. pple sequor; The pf. dep.
 pple is often translated, 'having Xed.'
exulēs: *as exiles*
Caere: *to Caere;* accusative, place to which
quae urbs: *which city...*; relative adj.
 37 **Gabiōs:** *to...*; acc. place to which

profectus: pf. dep. pple, proficīscor, see 36
tamquam: *as if;* formed from correlative
 adverbs tam, 'so,' and quam, 'as'
ab ultōribus: *by...*; abl. of agent
 38 **ipse:** (*he*) *himself;* Sextus
intulerat: pf. inferō
 39 **annōs vīgintī:** *for...*; acc. duration of time
Rēgnum: *The kingship*
 40 **Rōmae:** *at...*; locative, place where
annōs ducentōs quadrāginta: *for...*; acc.
 of duration of time
 41 **L. Iūnius...Collātīnus:** nom. in apposition
 to cōsulēs

13a. Horatius Cocles

Tarquinius, ut rēgnum reciperet, ad Lartem Porsenam Clūsinum 1
rēgem fūgit. Eī persuāsit nē rēgem Etrūscae sanguinis rēgnō prīvārī
paterētur. Porsena Rōmam īnfestō exercitū vēnit. Magnus terror
senātum occupāvit; adeō firma rēs Clūsīna tum erat magnumque
Porsenae nōmen. 5

Cum hostēs adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs veniunt
urbemque ipsam mūniunt praesidiīs. Alia loca mūrīs, alia Tiberī
obiectō, vidēbantur tūta. Pōns Sublicius tamen iter paene hostibus
dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Cocles, quī forte ad pontem
positus erat. Clūsīnī repentīnō impetū lāniculum cēpērunt atque 10
inde vėlōciter ad flūmen dēcurrēbant.

adeō: such a degree, so, 2
adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist., 2
Clūsīnus, -a, -um: of Clusium, 5
Cocles, Coclitis m.: Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ 4
dēcurrō, -ere, -currī: run down, 3
firmus, -a, -um: strong, steadfast, 3
Horātius, -ī m.: Horatius, 4
lāniculum, -ī n.: Janiculum hill, 3
īnfestus, -a, -um: hostile, unsafe, 4
Lars, Lartis m.: Lars
mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum: fortify, build, 5
mūrus, -ī m.: wall, rampart, 3
nī: if not, unless
obicīō, -ere, -iectī, -iectum: throw (in the way)
occupō (I): seize, occupy, 5

paene: almost, nearly, 4
patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer; allow (+ inf), 7
pōns, pontis m.: bridge, 7
praesidium, -ī n.: garrison, protection, 5
prīvō (I): deprive of, rob, strip from, 3
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take
back, 4
repentīnus, -a, -um: sudden, unexpected
sanguis, sanguinis m.: blood, 2
Sublicius, -a, -um: Sublicius (lit. ‘built on
wood piles/stakes’ driven into the mud)
terror, terrōris m.: terror, fright, 4
tūtus, -a, -um: safe, secure, guarded, 2
vėlōciter: swiftly, quickly

- 1 **ut...reciperet:** *so that...might*; purpose
- Lartem Porsenam:** *Lars Porsena*
- 2 **Eī:** *him*; dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id
nē...paterētur: *that he...;* negative ind.
command; impf. dep. subj. patior, ‘allow,’
and Porsenna is the subject
- rēgnō:** *from...;* abl. of separation
- 3 **Rōmam:** *to...;* acc. place to which
- 4 **adeō firma...:** *So strong...;* the predicates
are placed first in the clause for emphasis
- rēs Clūsīna:** *the state of Clusium*
- 5 **Porsenae nōmen (erat):** add linking verb
- 6 **cum...adessent:** with impf. subj. adsum
- omnēs:** i.e. all the Romans
- 7 **Alia loca mūrīs (vidēbātur tūta, et) alia
(loca) Tiberī obiectō vidēbātur tūta:** *some
places...other places;* There is considerable

- ellipsis in these parallel clauses. Walls
enclose the city of Rome except along the
Tiber river, where the river and riverbank
prevent any enemy from entering.
- 8 **vidēbantur:** *seemed;* governs a predicate
adj.; tūta is neuter pl. nom. pred.
 - Pōns Sublicius:** *Pons Sublicius;* the proper
name for a wooden bridge across the Tiber
 - iter:** *a route;* i.e. a way in the city
 - 9 **nī...fuisset:** *if there...;* plpf. subj. sum; nī =
nisi = sī nōn
 - forte:** *by chance;* abl. as adv., fors, fortis
 - ad:** *near...*
 - 10 **lāniculum:** This hill faces Rome on the
far side of the Tiber river. The Pons
Sublicius connects the hill to the city.

13b. Horatius Cocles

Cocles, cum suōs fugere vīdisset, ōrāvit eōs ut manērent et pontem rescinderent; sē impetum hostium, quantum ūnus posset id facere, exceptūrum esse. Prōcessit inde in prīmum aditum pontis ipsāque audāciā turbāvit hostēs. 12 15

Duōs tamen cum eō pudor tenuit, Sp. Larcium et T. Herminium, ambōs clārōs genere factisque. Cum hīs prīmam pugnam paulisper sustinuit. Deinde eōs, parvā parte pontis relictā, cēdere in tūtum iussit. Pudor inde commōvit Etrūscōs, et, clāmōre sublātō, undīque in ūnum hostem tēla coniciunt. Dēnique, ponte paene rescissō, 20

aditus, -ūs m.: entrance, means of approach

ambō: both, two together, 3

audācia, -ae f.: boldness, audacity, 2

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum: move; withdraw, give up, 4

clāmōr, clāmōris m.: cry, shout, 3

Cocles, Coclitis m.: Cocles, 'one-eyed,' 4

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, mōtum: upset, trouble, 2

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw, hurl, 5

dēnique: lastly, finally, 7

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take out, receive, 5

genus, -eris n.: birth, race; kind, family, 4

Herminius, -ī m.: Herminius

Larcius, -īī m.: Larcius

maneō, -ēre, mansī: stay, wait, wait for, 7

ōrō (1): pray, entreat, beseech, 3

paene: almost, nearly, 4

parvus, -a, -um: small, 4

paulisper: a little while, a little, somewhat, 2

pōns, pontis m.: bridge, 7

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 4

pudor, pudōris m.: shame, 2

quantus, -a, -um: how much, how great, 3

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum: cut back, 2

Sp.: Spurius

sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 5

T.: Titus

tēlum, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6

tollō, tolle, sustulī, sublātum: raise, destroy 2

turbō (1): confuse, disturb, 3

tūtus, -a, -um: safe, secure, guarded, 2

undīque: from everywhere, from all sides, 2

12 **Cocles:** Horatius received the cognomen Cocles, 'one-eyed,' after he lost an eye in a previous battle.

suōs (virōs) fugere: *that...*; ind. disc., the acc. subj. are his fellow soldiers on the Pons Sublicius

ōrāvit: governs both an ind. command with ut + subj. and ind. statement; a construction not unusual in Caesar's writings

ut...rescinderent: *that...*; ind. command with impf. subj. governed by ōrāvit

13 **sē...exceptūrum esse:** (*and*) *that he...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf. governed by ōrāvit, translate with 'would' in secondary seq.; Horatius orders the soldiers to act and then states what he himself will do

13 **quantum:** *for however long...*; relative

clause; quantum is acc. of duration; verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. disc. become subj., here 3s impf. subj. possum

16 **Sp.....Herminium:** in apposition to duōs

17 **genere factisque:** *in...and in...*; 'abl. of respect; facta are 'things having been done' or just 'deeds'

Cum hīs: *with...*; abl. of accompaniment

18 **parvā parte...relictā:** abl. abs.

in tūtum: *to safety*

19 **iussit:** pf. iubeō

clāmōre sublātō: abl. absolute, PPP of tollō

20 **in:** *against*

tēla: A tēlum is usually a projectile and may also be translated as spear or an arrow depending on the context.

ponte...rescissō: abl. abs.

13c. Horatius Cocles

Cocles armātus in Tiberim dēsilit incolumisque ad suōs trānāvit.
Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit: statua eius in comitiō
posita est, et agrī quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit datum est. 23

armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5
circumarō (1): plow around
Cocles, Coclitis m.: Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ 4
comitium, -ī n.: meeting, assembly, 4
dēsiliō -īre -siluī -sultum: leap/jump down
ergā: toward, for

21 **ad suōs (virōs):** supply a noun
22 **Grāta:** predicate adjective in emphatic
position (placed first for emphasis), cīvitās
is fem. sg. subject
eius: gen. sg. is, ea, id

grātus, -a, -um: pleasing, grateful, 4
incolumis, -e: untouched, uninjured, safe, 2
quantus, -a, -um: how much, how great, 3
statua, -ae f.: statue, image, 2
trānō (1): swim across, 2

23 **agrī quantum...circumarāvit:** *as much of
land as...;* a relative clause; agrī is a
partitive gen., the missing antecedent is
subject of datum est
ūnō diē: *within...;* abl. of time within

14a. Mucius Scaevola

Porsena, praesidiō in Iāniculō locātō, in rīpīs Tiberis castra posuit. Cum Gaius Mūcius, adulēscēns nōbilis, ad senātum adiisset, “Trānsīre Tiberim”, inquit, “Pātrēs, et intrāre, sī possim, castra hostium volō.” Patrēs probāvērunt, et Mūcius profectus est. Ibi, cum stipendium militibus Etrūscīs forte darētur; scrība cum 5 rēge pāri ferē ornātū sedēbat. Mūcius scrībam prō rēge occīdit et statim comprehensus est.

Cum rēx, perīculō territus, nisi omnēs insidiās contrā rēgem aperīret, Mūcium ignī darī iubēret, Mūcius dextram in ignī ad sacrificium accensō posuit. Rēx, attonitus, ab sēde suā prōsiluit 10

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum: kindle

adeō: such a degree, so, 2

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum: open, disclose, 5

attonitus, -a, -um: astonished, stunned

comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum: grasp, seize, 5

dexter, -ra, -rum: right (hand); favorable, 3

ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7

Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 3

Iāniculum, -ī n.: Janiculum hill, 3

ignis, -is m.: fire, 3

insidiae, -ārum f.: ambush, trap, 2

intrō (1): go into, enter, 2

locō (1): put, place, 2

Mūcius, -ī m.: Mucius, 7

nisi: if not, unless, 7

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum: kill, cut down, 7

ornātus, -ūs m.: adornment, ornament

praesidium, -iī n.: garrison, protection, 5

probō (1): approve, 4

prōsilīō, -īre, -uī: leap or jump forward, 2

rīpa, -ae f.: riverbank, bank, shore, 2

sacrificium, ī n.: sacrifice

scrība, -ae m.: scribe, secretary, 2

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī: sit, sit down; set, 7

sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6

statim: immediately, on the spot, at once, 5

stipendium, -iī n.: pay; military service, 3

terreō, -ēre, -uī, territum: terrify, scare

1 **praesidiō...locātō:** abl. abs.; once again, the Janiculum hill faces Rome on the other side of the Tiber

2 **cum...adiisset:** plpf. subj. adeō, adīre

3 **Tiberim:** Tiber river; acc. sg.

Pātrēs: voc, direct address; i.e. senators

sī possim: *If I should...*; or ‘in the hope that I...’ 1s pres. subj. possum, an optative subj. (subj. of wish)

4 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor

5 **forte:** *by chance*; abl. as adv., fors, fortis

6 **pāri ornātū:** *with...*; abl. of manner; pāri is

3rd decl. i-stem abl. sg. (‘i’ in abl. sg.)

prō: *instead of...*, *in place of...*

nisi...aperīret: *if...not...*; verbs in a subordinate clause in ind. disc. become subj.; impf. subj.

9 **Mūcium...darī:** *that...*; ind. disc. with pass. inf.

ignī: dat. ind. obj.

dextram (mānum): add fem. sg. manum

ignī: abl. sg., 3rd decl. i-stem noun

ad: *for...*; expressing purpose

10 **accensō:** PPP modifying ignī

14b. Mucius Scaevola

āmōvērīque ab ārā iuvenem iussit. Porsena virtūtem eius mīrātus est et “Tē intactum inviolātumque,” inquit, “hinc dīmīttam.” Mūcium, cui postea cognōmen Scaevolae datum est, lēgātī ā Porsenā Rōmam sēcūtī sunt et ibi condīciōnēs pācis tulērunt. 14

āmōvēō, -ēre, -mōvī, mōtum: move away
ara, arae f.: altar
cognōmen, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6
condicio, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 3
dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -sum: dismiss, let go 5
hinc: from here, hence, 3
intactus, -a, -um: untouched

- 11 **āmōvērī...iuvenem:** *that...*; ind. disc.
eius: gen. sg. is, ea, id
mīrātus est: pf. dep. mīror
12 **dīmīttam:** 1s fut.
13 **cui:** *to...*; dat. ind. object
Scaevolae: the cognomen means ‘lefty’

inviolō (1): not violate, not harm
mīror, -ārī, mīrātus sum: wonder, be amazed at
Mūcius, -īī m.: Mucius, 7
Scaevola, -ae m.: Scaevola
tū: you, 6

- and is appropriate because Gaius Mucius Scaevola burned his right arm
ā: *from...*; abl. place from which
14 **Rōmam:** *to...*; place to which
sēcūtī sunt: pf. dep. sequor
tulērunt: pf. ferō, ferre, tulī

15. Cloelia

Porsena filiās nōbīlium Rōmānōrum inter obsidēs accēpit. Cloelia virgō ūna ex obsidibus fuit. Cum castra Etrūscōrum forte haud procul rīpā Tiberis locāta esset, Cloelia, dux agminis virginum, inter tēla hostium Tiberim trānāvīt, integrōsque omnēs Rōmam restituit. Quod ubi rēgī nuntiātum est, rēx, irā incensus, 5
ōrātōrēs Rōmam mīsīt ad Cloeliam obsidem dēposcendam.

Cum Cloelia revēnisset, Porsena virtūtem virginis laudāvit et id facinus suprā Coclitēs Mūciōsque esse dīxit. Tum, eam cum parte obsidum Rōmam rēmīsīt. Pāce redintegrātā, Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestrī, dōnāvērunt; 10
in summā Sacrā viā fuit posita virgō insidēns equō.

agmen, agminis n.: battle line, column
Cloelia, -ae f.: Cloelia, 4
Cocles, Coclitēs m.: Cocles, 'one-eyed,' 4
dēposcō, -ere, -poposcī: demand, ask for
dōnō (1): give, bestow, 5
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 3
equus, -ī m.: horse, 3
facinus, -noris n.: deed, action; crime, 3
fēmina, -ae f.: woman
genus, -eris n.: birth, race; kind, family, 4
haud: by no means, not at all, 4
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēsum: kindle, burn, 7
insidēō, -ēre, -sēdī: sit on
integer, -gra, -grum: untouched, unhurt, 3
īra, irae f.: anger, 3

- 2 **nōbīlium:** gen. pl. 3rd decl. i-stem adj.
forte: *by chance*; abl. as adv.; fors, fortis
3 **haud procul:** i.e. near
rīpā: *from...*; abl. of separation
4 **inter tēla:** *among the projectiles*; a tēlum is a thrown weapon and can also be translated as either a javelin or an arrow
hostium: gen. pl. 3rd decl. i-stem noun
5 **Rōmam:** *to...*; place to which
Quod: *this*; subject of nuntiātum est; a connective relative: where Latin prefers a relative in translation, English prefers a demonstrative.
ubi: *when*
incensus: PPP incendō
6 **ōrātōrēs:** i.e. envoys or legates

laudō (1): praise, glorify, 5
locō (1): put, place, 2
Mūcius, -ī m.: Mucius, 7
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7
obsēs, obsidis m./f.: hostage, 4
ōrātōr, ōrātōris m.: speaker, orator
procul: far, from afar, from a distance
redintegrō (1): renew, restore
remittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send back, 3
reveniō, -īre, -vēnī: come back
rīpa, -ae f.: riverbank, bank, shore, 2
statua, -ae f.: statue, image, 2
suprā: above, beyond
tēlum, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6
trānō (1): swim across, 2

- ad...dēposcendam:** *for...*; lit. 'for Cloelia... going) to be demanded; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing)+ acc. object
7 **id facinus...esse:** *that this deed...*; ind. disc., id is a demonstrative adj.
8 **suprā Coclitēs Mūciōsque:** *above the Cocleses and Muciuses*; i.e. above Cocles and Mucius and everyone of the same character
eam: i.e. Cloelia
9 **Pāce redintegrātā:** abl. abs.
10 **novō genere:** *with...*; abl. of means
equestrī: abl. sg. 3rd decl. i-stem adj.
11 **equō:** *on...*; dat. of compound verb

16a. The Secession of the Plebs

Prīmīs temporibus reī pūblicaē liberāe magna dissēnsio orta est 1
inter patrēs et plēbem propter aes aliēnum, quō paene tōta plēbs
premēbantur. Crēditōrī enim licēbat dēbitōrem etiam in servitūtem
dūcere. Praetereā iūs reddēbātur ā cōsulibus, quī magistrātus
tantum patribus patēbat. 5

Cum iam plēbs auxilium ā cōsulibus postulārent, Latīnī
equitēs nunitavērunt Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam venīre. Plēbs
exultābant gaudiō, atque inter sē hortābantur nē nōmina darent. At
ūnus ē cōsulibus, plēbe convocāta, pollicitus est iūdicia
intermittere quoad mīlitēs in castrīs essent; bellō cōfectō, senātum 10

aes, aeris n.: bronze, 2
aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5
convocō (1): call together, 4
crēditōr, -ōris m.: creditor
dēbitōr, dēbitōris m.: debtor
dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 3
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 6
exultō (1): leap up, exult
gaudium, -iī n.: gladness, joy, 2
hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum: encourage, urge
intermittō, -ere: interrupt, leave off, pause
iūdicium, -ī n.: decision, judgment; trial, 3
liber, libera, liberum: free, 4
licet, -ēre, -uit: is allowed, permitted, 3

magistratus, -ūs m.: magistracy, office, 5
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3
paene: almost, nearly, 4
pateō, -ēre, -uī: lie open, extend, 2
polliceor, -cērī, -citus sum: promise, offer, 4
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5
praetereā: besides, moreover
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum: press, check
quoad: how far, as far as, as long as, 2
reddō -ere -didī -ditum: give back, render, 5
servitūs, servitūtis f.: servitude
Volscī, -ōrum m.: Volscians, Volsci, 4

- 1 **prīmīs temporibus:** *in the early times*
reī pūblicaē liberāe: gen. with temporibus;
rēs pūblica may be translated ‘government’
or ‘republic’ depending on the context
orta est: pf. deponent orior
2 **aes aliēnum:** *debt*; ‘another’s bronze’ or
‘another’s money,’ a common expression
3 **crēditōrī:** *for...*; dat. of interest
licēbat: *it...;* impersonal impf. licet
etiam: *even*
4 **iūs reddēbātur:** *justice was rendered*;
‘justice was given back’
quī magistrātus: *which office*; relative adj.
5 **tantum:** *only*; adverbial acc.
patribus: dat. of interest
6 **Cum...postulārent:** *while...*
7 **Volscōs...venīre:** *that...;* ind. disc. Volsci
were a local Latin tribe hostile to Rome
7 **ad...oppugnandum:** *for...;* for...(going) to

- be assaulted’ ad + acc. expresses purpose;
perform a gerund-gerundive flip and
translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund
(-ing)+ obj.
8 **hortābantur:** 3p impf. dep. hortor
nē...darent: *that...not*; neg. ind. command
with impf. subj. The plebs refuse to register
their names and enroll as troops to help the
Roman cause in the war.
9 **plēbe convocāta:** abl. abs.
pollicitus est: pf. dep. polliceor
iūdicia intermittere: *that (they)...*; ind.
disc., iūdicia is the acc. obj. of the inf.;
the leaders promise to stop trials regarding
the debts of the plebs while they fight
10 **quoad...essent:** impf. subj.; subj. of a
subordinate clause in ind. disc.; impf. subj.
sum
bellō cōfectō: abl. abs.

16b. Secession of the Plebs

plēbī cōnsultūrum esse. Eō modō plēbī persuāsīt ut nōmina darent. Volscī aliūque populī finitimī victī sunt.

Posteā tamen iūs dē crēditīs pecūniīs crūdēliter, ut anteā, dictum est. Tandem plēbs, cum exercitus, aliō bellō coōrtō, in armīs esset, dēspērātō cōnsulum senātūsque auxiliō, in Sacrum montem 15 sēcessērunt. Hic mons trāns Aniēnem flūmen est, tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Patrēs arbitrātī nūllam spem nisi in concordīā cīvium reliquam esse, ad plēbem mīsērunt Menēnium Agrippam, ipsum plēbeium et plēbī cārum. 19

Agrippa, ae m.: Agrippa

Aniō, Aniēnis f.: Anio river

arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum: judge, think

cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 4

consulō, -ere, -uī, consultum: consult, 3

coōrior, -orīrī, -ortus sum: arise, 2

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7

crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 3

dēspērō (I): despair, feel no hope, 3

Menēnius, -ī m.: Menenius, 2

mille, pl. mīlia: thousand, 6

modus, ī n.: manner, form; measure, 6

nisi: if not, unless, 7

passus, -ūs: pace, 2

reliquus, -a, um: remaining, left, 6

sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī: go away, withdraw, 2

tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6

trāns: across, over, 3

Volscī, -ōrum m.: Volscians, Volsci, 4

11 (et) senātum...consultūrum esse: (and) *that...*; a second ind. statement governed by pollicitus est. Translate the fut. inf. in secondary sequence with 'would.'

eō modō: *in this way*; abl. of manner

plēbī: *the plebs*; dat. ind. obj.

ut...darent: *that...*; ind. command. Once again, the patrēs made these concessions so that the plebs would register their names and enlist as soldiers in the army.

13 iūs...dictum est: *justice was delivered*; 'justice was spoken'

crēditīs: *lent, borrowed*; 'entrusted' PPP

ut: *as, just as*; parenthetical, a clause of comparison equiv. to 'ut anteā dictum erat'

14 cum...esset: *since...*; causal, impf. sum.

aliō bellō coōrtō: abl. abs., a pf. deponent pple is often translated 'having Xed.'

15 dēspērātō...auxiliō: abl. abs.

cōnsulum: *of the consuls*; subjective gen.

pl. modifying auxiliō

in Sacrum montem: *onto...*; the Sacred Mt. is a hill outside of Rome

16 tria: neuter pl. of trēs

mīlia passuum: *miles*; 'thousands of paces' acc. of extent of space and partitive gen.

Often this acc. follows 'for,' but the preposition is not needed here. Mīlia is neut. pl. of mille.

17 arbitrātī: pf. deponent pple. As often this pple is translated as 'having Xed.'

nūllam spem...esse: *that...*; ind. disc. governed by the pple arbitrātī.

nisi: *except*

18 Menēnium Agrippam: *Menenius Agrippa*

19 plēbī cārum: *dear to the plebs*; dat. of reference (point of view)

17. Menenius Agrippa

Menēnius hoc narrāvisse fertur: “Ōlim relinquet partēs corporis 1
hūmānī indignābantur quod suā cūrā, suō labōre ac ministeriō
ventrī omnia quaererentur, venter in mediō quiētus datīs
voluptātibus fruerētur; coniūrāvērunt inde nē manūs ad ōs cibum
ferrent, nēve ōs datum cibum acciperet, nēve dentēs cōnficerent. 5
Sed dum ventrem famē domāre volunt, ipsa membra tōtumque
corpus paene periērunt. Inde sēnsērunt ventris quoque ministerium
haud iners esse.”

Ostendit deinde dissēsiōnem inter partēs corporis similem esse
īrae plēbis in patrēs et ita flexit mentēs hominum. Concordiā 10
reconciliātā, plēbī permissum est suōs magistrātūs creāre tribūnōs
plēbeiōs, quī auxilium plēbī adversus cōsulēs ferrent.

cibus, -ī m.: food, 2
coniūrō (1): swear together, conspire, 4
cūrā, -ae f.: care, concern, worry, 5
dēns, dentis m.: tooth
dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 3
domō (1): subdue, tame, master
famēs, -is f.: hunger, 2
flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum: turn, bend, 3
fruo, fruī, frūctum: enjoy
haud: by no means, not at all, 4
homō, -inis m./f.: man, mortal, human, 4
hūmānus, -a, -um: human, humane, 3
indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum: be angered, 3
iners, inertis: idle, indolent, inert
īra, īrae f.: anger, 3
labor, -is m.: labor, toil, 3
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistracy, office, 5
manus, -ūs f.: hand; group, 7
membrum, -ī n.: limb, member

- 1 **fertur:** *is reported*
2 **quod...quaerentur (sed)...fruerētur:**
because...; 'on the grounds that...' causal
quod clause; quod + subj. suggests an
alleged cause from a character's point of
view; impf. pass. subj. quaerō
suā cūrā (et) suō labōre ac ministeriō: *by*
their...; abl. means, suus refers to partēs
3 **ventrī:** *for...;* dat. of interest
(sed) venter: *(but) the stomach...*
datīs voluptātibus: abl. object of dep.

Menēnius, -ī m.: Menenius, 2
mēns, mentis f.: mind, intent, purpose, 2
ministerium, -ī n.: service, office, 2
narrō (1): relate, tell, narrate, 2
nēve: or not, and not, nor, 2
ōlim: once, formerly, 3
ōs, ōris n.: face, mouth, 4
ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
paene: almost, nearly, 4
pereō, -ire, perī: pass away, perish, 3
permittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send through, 3
plēbeius, -a, -um: of the plebs, 2
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesitum: seek, ask,
inquire, 6
quiētus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed, 4
reconciliō (1): win back, recover, 2
sentīō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus: feel, perceive, 2
similis, simile: similar to, like, 2
venter, ventris m.: belly, 4

- fruerētur
4 **nē...ferrent...nēve...nēve...:** *that...not...
or that...not...or that not...;* ind. commands
impf. subj.; -ve, 'or,' is an enclitic
7 **ventris...esse:** *that...;* ind. disc., sum
9 **dissēsiōnem...patrēs:** *that...;* ind. disc.
īrae: *to the anger;* dat. with adj. similis
11 **permissum est:** *it was...;* impersonal pf.
tribūnōs plēbeiōs: in apposition to
acc. pl. magistrātūs
12 **quī...:** *who would...;* relative of purpose

18a. Cincinnatus

Posteā, dum tribūnī imperium cōsulāre lēgibus dēfīnīre 1
cōnantur, L. Quīnctius Cincinnātus cōsul factus est. Ut
magistrātum iniit, reprehendit et senātum et plēbem, quod eīdem
tribūnī etiam atque etiam creatī cīvitātem turbārent. Senātus igitur
dēcrēvit magistrātus continuārī contrā rem pūblicam esse. 5

Plēbs tamen eōsdem, quōs anteā, tribūnōs creāvērunt. Patrēs
quoque, nē quid cēderent plēbī, Lūcium Quīnctium cōsulem
fēcērunt. At is, “Minimē mīrum est,” inquit, “sī nihil auctōritātis,
patrēs cōnscrīptī, habētis apud plēbem. Vōs eam minuitis, quī in
continuandīs magistrātibus plēbem imitāmini. Ego mē contrā 10

auctōritās, -tātis f.: authority, 4
cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum: move; withdraw,
give up, 4
Cincinnātus, -ī m.: Cincinnatus
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7
cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptum: enroll, register
cōsulāris, -e: consular, of a consul
continuō (1): make continuous, 2
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5
dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: limit
imitor, -ārī, imitātus sum: imitate, copy, 3

- 1 **cōnantur:** 3p pres. deponent
- 2 **cōsul:** predicate nom. following factus est
Ut: *When...*
- 3 **et...et:** *both...and*
quod...turbārent: *because...*; ‘on the
grounds that...’ quod + subj. suggests an
alleged cause from a character’s point of
view; impf. subj.
eīdem tribūnī: nom. pl. īdem, eadem, idem
- 4 **etiam atque etiam:** *again and again;* a
common expression
- 5 **dēcrēvit:** i.e. decreed, decided (by decree)
magistrātus...esse: *that it is contrary to the
republic that...;* ind. disc., magistrātus
continuārī is a second acc. + inf. clause and
is the subject of esse and often translated in
English afterwards
- 6 **eōsdem...tribūnōs:** acc. īdem, eadem, idem

ineō, -īre, -ī, -ītum: go into, enter, 4
Lūcius, -ī m.: Lucius, 3
magistratus, -ūs m.: magistracy, office, 5
minimē: least, by no means, not at all
minuō, -ere, minuī: diminish, ebb
mīrus, -a, -um: amazing, wonderful, strange 3
Quīnctius, -ī m.: Quinctius, 5
reprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum: blame, rebuke, 3
turbō (1): confuse, disturb, 3
vōs: you, you all, 5

- quōs anteā (creāvērunt):** *just as before;*
‘whom (they had created) before’
- 7 **nē ...:** *so that...might not;* neg. purpose +
impf. subj.
quid: *anything;* acc.; after sī, nisi, num, and
nē (ali)quis, (ali)quid is indefinite (any,
some)
 - 8 **fēcērunt:** *made (x) (y);* double acc.
mīrum est: *it is amazing;* impersonal
auctōritātis: partitive gen. with nihil
 - 9 **patrēs cōnscrīptī:** vocative, direct address.
i.e. senators, those registered/enrolled as
senators by the census.
eam: *it;* i.e. fem. sg. auctōritās
in continuandīs magistrātibus: *in...;* ‘in...
(going) to be reelected,’ Perform a gerund-
gerundive flip and translate as a gerund
(-ing) + acc. obj.

18b. Cincinnatus

senātūs cōnsultum cōnsulem reficī nōn patiar.” Alius igitur cōnsul factus est.

Post paucōs annōs Aequī exercitum Rōmānum mūnitiōnibus clausum obsidēbant. Cum hoc Rōmam nuntiātum esset, L. Quīnctius consensū omnium dictātor dictus est. Lēgātī ā senātū 15 missī eum invēnērunt trāns Tiberim agrum quattuor iūgerum colentem atque in opus intentum. Rogāvērunt ut togātus mandāta senātūs audīret. Quīnctius admirātus iubet uxōrem togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre. Cum, abstersō sūdōre, togā vēlātus prōcessisset, dictātōrem eum lēgātī salūtant atque in urbem vocant; quī terror sit 20 in exercitū expōnunt.

abstergeō, -ere, -tersī, -tersum: wipe away
admiror, -ārī, -ātus sum: admire, wonder, 4
Aequī, -ōrum m.: Aequi, Aequians
claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: close, enclose, 6
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum: cultivate; worship, 3
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5
cōnsultum, -ī n.: resolution, deliberation
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum: set forth, 5
intentus, -a, -um: attentive, intent, 3
inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: come upon, find, 5
iūger, iūgeris n.: acre, a juger, 2
mandō (1): entrust, give, commit, 5
mūnitiō, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5

patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer; allow (+ inf), 7
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 4
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry forward, 4
properus, -a, -um: hasty, quick, rapid
quattuor: four, 5
Quīnctius, -ī m.: Quinctius, 5
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: remake, renew
rogō (1): ask, 3
salūtō (1): greet, 2
sūdōr, -ōris m.: sweat, perspiration
terror, terrōris m.: terror, fright, 4
toga, -ae f.: toga, 5
togātus, -a, -um: toga-clad
trāns: across, over, 3
tugurium, -ī n.: hut, cottage
vēlō (1): veil, shroud

- 11 **senātūs consultum:** *resolution of the senate;* The senate does not pass laws (lēgēs) but advice or resolutions which carry weight because of the authority and clout of the Romans within the Senate.
reficī: pass. inf.. reficiō; cōnsulem is pred.
patiar: 1s fut. patior, ‘allow’
cōnsul: as consul; predicative nom.
 14 **clausum:** *closed off (from escape);* The Aequians had surrounded the army and built fortifications, likely a ditch and wall, to keep the army from escaping.
Rōmam: *to...*; acc. place to which
nuntiātum esset: plpf. subj.
 15 **omnium:** subjective gen. with consensū
dictātor: predicative nom. after dictus est

- trāns...colentem:** a participial phrase with pres. pple modifying eum
quattuor iūgerum: *of four iugera;* gen. pl. of measure; a iūgerum is 0.6 of an acre
 17 **in:** *upon..., on...*
ut...audīret: *that...;* ind. command + impf. subj.
mandāta: *orders;* ‘things ordered,’ PPP
uxōrem...prōferre: *that...;* ind. disc.
 19 **abstersō sūdōre:** abl. abs.
 20 **salūtant:** *salute (x) as (y);* a double acc.: acc. direct object and acc. predicate
(eum) vocant: supply a direct object
quī terror...in exercitū: *what terror...;* ind. question + pres. subj. sum; quī is an interrogative adj.

18c. Cincinnatus

Quīnctius exercitum obsessum celeriter liberāvit et hostēs sub 22
iugum mīsīt. Triumphāns urbem iniit sextōque decimō diē 24
dictātūrā in sex mensēs acceptam dēposuit.

celeriter: swiftly, quickly, 5
decimus, -a, -um: tenth, 2
dēponō, -ere, -posuī: put down, deposit, 5
dictātūra, -ae f.: dictatorship, 2
ineō, -īre, -ī, -itum: go into, enter, 4
iugum, -ī n.: yoke, range, 2
liberō (1): free, liberate, 5

- 22 **sub iugum mīsīt:** *sent...under the yoke;*
i.e. enslaved them. A iugum is a harness
used on oxen to compel them to pull a cart
or plow. This expression is found in Caesar
and elsewhere to describe when an army is
forced to surrender and reduced to slavery.
- 23 **Triumphāns:** *celebrating a Triumph;* A
triumph is a formal parade where a military
leader given permission by the Senate to

mensis, -is m.: month, 2
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5
Quīnctius, -īī m.: Quinctius, 5
sex: six, 2
sextus, -a, -um: sixth, 2
triumphō (1): celebrate a triumph, 4

- bring armed soldiers into Rome for a
celebratory parade. It is considered one of
the highest honors bestowed by the Senate
on a Roman.
- sextōque decimō diē:** *on...;* abl. of time
when
- 24 **in sex mensēs:** *for...;* acc. of duration. The
office of dictator lasted half the length of a
typical consulship.

19a. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

Ōlim lēgātī ab Clūsīnīs Rōmam vēnērunt auxiliū petentēs 1
adversus Senonēs, gentem Gallicam. Tum Rōmānī mīsērunt
lēgātōs quī monērent Gallōs nē amīcōs populī Rōmānī
oppugnārent. Proeliō tamen commissō, lēgātī Rōmānī contrā iūs
gentium arma cēpērunt auxiliūque Clūsīnīs tulērunt. Gallī posteā 5
ā senātū Rōmānō postulāvērunt ut prō iūre gentium ita violātō
lēgātī Rōmānī dēderentur. Hōc negātō, exercitus Gallicus Rōmam
profectus est.

Rōmānī, quī nihil ad tantum perīculum idōneum parāvērunt,
apud flūmen Alliam superātī sunt. Diem quō hoc proelium factum 10

Allia, -ae f.: Allia river, 3
amīcus, -ī m.: friend, 4
Clūsīnus, -a, -um: (inhabitants) of Clusium, 5
commissō, -ere, -sī, -sum: commit; begin, 3
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, of Gaul, 3
idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate

moneō, -ēre, -uī, monitum: warn, 4
negō (1): deny, say that...not, 4
ōlim: once, formerly, 3
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5
Senonēs, -um m.: Senones
violō (1): violate, commit outrage, 4

1 **ab Clūsīnīs:** *from the Clusini*; an Etruscan tribe
Rōmam: *to...*; place to which
2 **adversus:** *against* + acc.
3 **quī monērent:** *who would...*; relative of purpose with impf. subj.
nē...oppugnārent: *that...not...*; or 'not to...' neg. indirect command governed by monērent
4 **Proeliō...commissō:** abl. abs., committere proelium, 'to begin battle,' is an common idiom
iūs gentium: *the law of nations*

5 **cēpērunt:** *took up*
Clūsīnīs: dat. ind. object
tulērunt: 3p pf. ferō
6 **ut...dēderentur:** *that...*; ind. command with impf. subj. governed by postulāvērunt
prō...violātō: *in return for...*
7 **hōc negātō:** abl abs., hōc refers to the demand for surrender
8 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor
9 **ad:** *for...*; expressing purpose
idōneum: modifies nihil not perīculum
10 **apud:** *at...*
quō: *on which (day)*; abl. of time when

19b. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

est Rōmānī postea Alliēnsem appellāvērunt. Magna pars exercitūs incolumis Veīōs perfūgīt. Cēterī Rōmam petiērunt et nē clausīs quidem portīs urbis, in arcem Capitoliumque cum coniugibus et liberīs sē contulērunt.

Gallī ingressī urbem nēmini parcunt, dīripiunt incenduntque 15 tēcta. Post aliquot diēs, testūdine factā, impetum in arcem fēcērunt. At Rōmānī mediō ferē colle restitērunt atque inde, ex locō superiōre impetū factō, Gallōs pepulērunt. Obsidio inde ā Gallīs parāta est. Pars exercitūs Gallicī dīmissa est ad frūmentum conferendum ex agrīs populōrum finitimōrum. Hōs fortūna ipsa 20

aliquot: several, 5

Alliēnsis, -e: of the Allia river, 3

arx, arcis f.: citadel, hilltop, 5

Capitolium, -ī n.: Capitolium, 5

cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 4

claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: close, enclose, 6

collis, -is m.: hill, 3

conferō, -ferre: bring together, collect, 4

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -sum: dismiss, let go 5

dīripiō, -ere, -uī, reptum: snatch, ransack, 3

ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7

fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4

frūmentum, -ī n.: grain, 3

Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, of Gaul, 3

incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēsum: kindle, burn, 7

incolumis, -e: untouched, uninjured, safe, 2

ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum: step in, enter, 4
nēmō, nullus, nēminī, nēminem, nullō/ā: no one, 6

obsidio, -iōnis f.: siege, blockade, 3

parcō, -ere, pepercī: spare, refrain (dat.), 3

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee, take refuge, 2

porta, -ae f.: gate, 3

superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6

tēctum, -ī n.: house, shelter

testūdo, -tūdinis f.: tortoise

Veī, -ōrum m.: Veii, 3

11 **appellāvērunt:** *called (x) (y);* a double acc. with diem and Alliēnsem (diem); originally in 390 BCE; *Alliensis diēs, 'day of the Alilia river'* is celebrated every June 18th

12 **Veīōs:** *to Veii;* acc. place to which; the name of the town is plural

Cēterī (mīlitēs): *the rest (of the soldiers)*

nē clausīs quidem: *not even having been closed;* nē...quidem, 'not even' emphasizes the intervening words; nē here does not introduce a clause; a PPP in an abl. absolute
in arcem Capitoliumque: The two peaks of the Capitoline hill are the Capitolium, seat of the temple of Jupiter Optimus Maximus and the arx, 'citadel,' which holds the treasury in the temple of Juno Moneta

14 **sē contulērunt:** *carried themselves;* i.e.

'hastened' or 'went'

15 **ingressī urbem:** pf. dep. pple ingredior, as often, translate the pple as 'having Xed'

16 **testūdine factā:** abl. abs. The 'tortoise' is a close formation of troops with shields out on all sides and on top to form a 'shell' for protection from projectiles.

17 **mediō colle:** *on...;* abl. place where
superiōre: *higher*

18 **impetū factō:** abl. abs., ex locō superiōre is part of the absolute

19 **exercitūs Gallicī:** partitive gen.
ad...conferendum: *for...;* 'for...(going) to be gathered' perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as a grerund (-ing) + acc. obj.

20 **hōs:** *these;* i.e. Gallic soldiers

19c. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

dūxit Ardeam, ubi Camillus, imperātor clārissimus, in exsiliō vīvēbat. Ardeātēs, eō duce, castra Gallōrum nocte oppugnant et solūtōs somnō trucīdant. Veīis interim nōn animi solum in diēs sed etiam vīrēs crescēbant.

Nam praeter Rōmānōs, quī ex pugnā Alliēnsī eō perfūgerant, 25 voluntārīi ex Latiō conveniēbant. Hī iam constituērunt Rōmam hostibus līberāre. Omnibus placuit Camillum arcessī, sed antea senātum cōsulī. Ad eam rem Pontius Cominius, audāx iuvenis, sublevātus cortice secundō Tiberī ad urbem dēfertur. Senātū probante, Camillus dictātor dictus est. 30

Alliēnsis, -e: of the Allia river, 3
arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum: summon, call
Ardea, -ae f.: Ardea, 4
Ardeātēs, -ium m.: inhabitants of Ardea
audāx, **audācis**: bold, daring
Camillus, -ī m.: Camillus, 4
Cominius, -ī m.: Cominius
conveniō -ire -vēni: come together, 6
cortex, **corticis** m.: bark
crescō, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum**: grow, increase, 4
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: offer, give over 6
exsilium, -ī n.: exile, 5
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 4
Latiō, -ōnis f.: Latium, 2
līberō (1): free, liberate, 5

oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3
perfuō, -ere, -fūgī: flee, take refuge, 2
placet: it is pleasing, it is resolved, 2
Pontius, -ī m.: Pontius
praeter: in addition to, besides; except (acc) 2
probō (1): approve, 4
secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 3
solvō, -ere, **solvī**, **solūtum**: loosen; pay
somnus, -ī m.: sleep, 2
sublevō (1): lift up, hold up, support
trucīdō (1): slaughter, massacre, 2
Veīi, -ōrum m.: Veii, 3
vīvō, -ere, **vīxī**, **vīctum**: live, 4
voluntārius, -a, -um: voluntary

- 21 **Ardeam**: acc. place to which
Camillus: a Roman leader
 22 **eō duce**: *this one being leader*; abl. abs., subj. and obj. in abl., supply pple ‘being’
nocte: *at...*; abl. of time when
 23 (**illōs**) **solūtōs somnō**: *those...*; Camillus and his troops attacked as the enemy slept
Veīis: *at Veii*; locative, place where
nōn solum...sed etiam: *not only...but also*
in diēs: *day by day*; ‘over the days’
 24 **vīrēs**: *strength*; 3rd decl. nom. pl. vīs;
 25 **Alliēnsī**: i-stem abl. modifies pugnā
eō: (*to*) *there*; adv. equiv. to ‘to that (place)’
 26 **voluntārīi**: *volunteers*
Rōmam: obj. of līberāre
hostibus: *from...*; abl. of separation
 27 **placuit**: *it...*; pf. of impersonal placet

- Camillum arcessī...sentātum cōsulī**: *that...but that...*; acc. + inf. clauses; both are subject of placuit; pass. inf. arcessō and cōsulō
 28 **Ad**: *for...*; expressing purpose, eam is a demonstrative adj. modifying rem
 29 **corticē**: abl. means, i.e. a raft made of cork; cork products are a renewable resource made from the thick bark of the cork tree, so a raft made of cork-bark is reasonable; Pontius Cominius had to travel through enemy territory to Rome
secundō Tiberī: (*down*) *a favorable Tiber river*; dat. of compound verb; translate as obj. of the prefix dē-, ‘down’
Senātū probante: abl. abs.
 30 **dictus est**: *was appointed*

19d. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

Interim arx Rōmae Capitōliumque in ingentī periculō fuērunt. Nocte enim Gallī, praemissō mīlite quī viam temptāret, tantō silentiō in summum ēvāsērunt ut nōn solum custōdēs fallerent, sed nē canēs quidem excitārent. Ānserēs autem nōn fefellērunt, quī avēs Iūnōnis sacrae erant. Nam M. Mānlius, vir bellō ēgregius, 35 clangōre eōrum ālārumque crepitū excitātus, dēiēcit Gallum quī iam in summō constiterat. Iamque alī Rōmānī tēlīs saxīsque hostēs prōpellunt, tōtaque aciēs Gallōrum praeceps dēfertur.

Sed famēs iam utrumque exercitum urgēbat, Gallōs pestilentia etiam. Diem ex diē Rōmānī frustrā auxiliū ab dictātōre 40

aciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6
āla, -ae f.: wing
ānser, -eris m.: goose
arx, arcis f.: citadel, hilltop, 5
avis, avis f.: bird
canis, -is m. f.: dog
Capitōlium, -ī n.: Capitolium, 5
clangor, -ōris m.: noise
crepitus, -ūs m.: rattle, clatter
custōs, custōdis m.: guard, doorkeeper, 3
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum: offer, give over 6
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw/cast down 4
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūm: go out, escape
excitō (1): rouse, stir up; awaken, 6
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum: deceive, cheat, 2

famēs, -is f.: hunger, 2
frustrā: in vain, for nothing, 4
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 4
Iūnō, -ōnis f.: Juno (queen of the gods)
M.: Marcus, 5
Mānlius, -ī m.: Manlius, 2
pestilentia, -ae f.: plague, pestilence
praeceps, praecipitis: headlong, fast
praemittō, -ere, -sī, -sum: send ahead, 2
prōpellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive forth
saxum, saxī n.: rock
silentium, -ī n.: silence
tēlum, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6
temptō (1): attempt, test; attack, 2
urgēō, -ere, ursī: press, urge, distress
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each, both, 6

- 31 **arx, Capitōlium:** the two peaks of the Capitoline hill
ingentī: abl. sg. 3rd decl. i-stem adj. ingēns
 32 **Nocte:** abl. time when
praemissō mīlite: abl. abs.; translate sg. mīlite as plural: ‘soldiers’
quī ...temptāret: *who would...*; relative clause of purpose modifying mīlite; The Gallic soldiers were trying to find a way to climb the hill and avoid the gates fortified by the Romans.
tantō silentiō: *with...*; abl. of manner
 33 **in summum (montem):** supply the noun
ut...excitārent: *that...*; result clause with impf. subj.: translate in the same tense
nōn solum...sed: *not only...but*

- 34 **nē...quidem:** *not even...*; emphasizes the intervening word
Ānserēs: acc. pl., the enemy is the subject
 35 **bellō:** *in...*; abl. of respect as often qualifying and clarifying an adj.
 36 **eōrum:** i.e. of the geese, from is, ea, id
excitātus: PPP modifying Manlius
 37 **iam constiterat:** *already had been standing;* plpf. progressive after iam
 38 **dēfertur:** i.e. fell down the slope as the result of the projectiles cast upon them; 3s pres. pres. dēferō
 39 **utrumque:** acc. sg. uterque
pestilentia (urgēbat): ellipsis, supply another main verb
 40 **Diem ex diē:** *Day after day*

19e. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

exspectābant. Postrēmō mille pondō aurī cum Gallīs pactī sunt ut obsidiōnem relinquerent. Huic reī, per sē turpissimae, indignitās addita est; nam pondera ab Gallīs allāta sunt iniqua. Rōmānīs recūsantibus, gladius ā Brennō, rēge Gallōrum, ponderī additus est cum hīs verbīs, “Vae victīs.” Sed priusquam rēs perfecta est, 45 dictātor pervēnit auferrīque aurum dē mediō et Gallōs summōvērī iussit. Cum illī dicerent sē pactōs esse, negat eam pactiōnem valēre, quae, postquam ipse dictātor creātus esset, iniussū suō facta esset; tum dēnuntiāt Gallīs ut sē ad proelium parent. 49

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: bring to, add, 7
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: take away, carry away, 5
aurum, -ī n.: gold, 3
Brennus, -ī m.: Brennus
dēnuntiō (1): declare, order, 2
exspectō (1): look out for, wait for, await, 3
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 6
indignitās, -tātis f.: indignity, outrage, 2
inīquus, -a, -um: uneven, unequal, not fair, 2
iniussū: without orders, 3
mille, pl. milia: thousand, 6
negō (1): deny, say that...not, 4
obsidio, -iōnis f.: siege, blockade, 3
pacīscor, -ī, pactus sum: agree, bargain, 2

pactiō, -tiōnis f.: agreement, bargain
perficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum: accomplish, bring about
perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: come through, arrive, 2
pondus, ponderis n.: weight, 6
postquam: after, when, 6
postrēmus, -a, -um: last, 3
priusquam: before than, sooner than, 2
recūsō (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5
summoveō, -ēre, -mōvī: remove, move up
turpis, turpe: ugly, shameful
Vae: woe, 2
valeō, -ēre, uī: be strong, fare well, be able

- 41 **mille pondō aurī:** 1000 in weight of gold; i.e. 1000 pounds of gold; abl. of respect and gen. of material; mille is neuter acc. obj. of pactī sunt
pactī sunt: pf. dep. pacīscor: translate in the active; the Romans are the subject
ut...relinquerent: so that...might...; purpose clause with impf. subj.
 42 **Huic reī, per sē turpissimae:** to this matter, in itself most shameful; dat. ind. obj.
pondera: i.e. the weights that the Gauls brought to serve as standards as they measured the gold on the scales.
allāta: PPP afferō, not 3p pf. pass.
Rōmānīs recūsantibus: abl. abs.
 44 **ponderī:** to...; dat. ind. obj.
 45 **Vae victīs:** Woe to the vanquished; or ‘woe to the conquered,’ famous expression:

- an interjection and dat. of interest, PPP of vincō, vincere
 46 **auferrīque...summōvērī:** that...; ind. disc. with pres. pass. inf. governed by iussit
 47 **iussit:** pf. iubeō
illī: those; i.e. the Gauls
sē pactōs esse: that...; ind. disc., with pf. pass. pacīscor
negat: Camillus is the subject
eam...valēre: that this...; ind. disc. eam is a demonstrative adj.
 48 **quae...facta esset:** which...; relative clause, subj. of subordinate clause in ind. disc.; here, plpf. subj. faciō
iniussū suō: without his order
 49 **ut...parent:** that...; ind. command with pres. subj. parō, parāre
ad: for...; expressing purpose

19f. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

Gallī et in urbe et alterō proeliō viā Gabīnā superātī sunt. 50
 Dictātor triumphāns in urbem rediit; “Rōmulus” ac “parens patriae
 conditorque alter urbis” appellābātur. Deinde servātam in bellō
 patriam iterum in pāce servāvit. Cum enim tribūnī plebem
 agitārent ut, relictīs Rōmae ruinīs, Veiōs migrārent, Camillus
 ōrātiōne ācrī cīvibus persuāsīt ut Rōmam restituerent. Centuriō 55
 quoque populum mōvit vōce opportūnē ēmissā, quī cum cohortibus
 forum trānsiēns clāmāvit: “Signum statue, signifer, hīc manēbimus
 optimē.” Quā vōce audītā, et senātus ē Cūriā ēgressus ōmen
 accipere sē conclāmāvit, et plēbs circumfūsa probāvērunt. 59

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, keen, 4
agitō (1): drive, impel
alter, -era, -erum: other, second, 7
Camillus, -ī m.: Camillus, 4
centurio, -iōnis m.: centurion
circumfundō -ere -fūdī -fūsum: pour around
clāmō (1): cry, shout out, 6
cohors, cohortis m.: cohort (unit of ~480) 2
conclāmō (1): cry out together, shout
conditor, -tōris m.: founder
Cūria, -ae f.: senate house, Curia, 8
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum: go out, disembark
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send out, 3
Gabīnus, -a, -um: of Gabii, 6
hīc: here
iterum: again, a second time, 3

maneō, -ēre, mansī: stay, wait, wait for, 7
migrō (1): travel, migrate, 3
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum: move, arouse, 5
ōmen, ōminis n.: omen
opportūnus, -a, -um: suitable, convenient
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 6
ōrātiō, -iōnis f.: speaking, speech, language, 3
parēns, parentis m.: parent, ancestor, 4
probō (1): approve, 4
ruīna, -ae f.: ruins, downfall, 3
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7
signifer, -ī m.: standard bearer
signum, -ī n.: sign, signal; standard, 6
triumphō (1): celebrate a triumph, 4
Veī, -ōrum m.: Veii, 3
vōx, vōcis f.: voice, 7

50 *et...et: both...and...*

(in) viā Gabīnā: i.e. on the road to Gabii

51 “Romulus”...appellābātur: *he was named...*; all of the nom. predicate forms in quotation marks are honorific titles

53 servāvit: Camillus is subject
 enim: *for...*; postpositive: translate first

54 ut...migrārent: *that they...*; i.e. the plebs, ind. command
 relictīs...ruīnīs: abl. abs.

Veīōs: *to Veii*; acc. place to which

55 ōrātiōne ācrī: abl. of means; ācrī is an abl. sg. 3rd decl. i-stem adj.

cīvibus: dat. ind. obj. of persuāsīt

ut...restituerent: *that...*; ind. command

56 vōce...ēmissā: abl. abs.; The centurion was making an off-hand remark that was heard by others and taken to be an ominous sign.

opportūnē: adverb

57 trānsiēns: nom. sg. pres. pple. trānsēō

Signum: *the standard*; i.e. the military standard, a long wood staff with insignia that soldiers used as a guide to arranged themselves under in formation

statue: *set up*; ‘make stand,’ sg. imperative

58 optimē: *very well*; superlative adv.

quā vōce audītā: *this utterance...*; abl. abs.; a connective relative: Latin prefers a relative in transitions where English prefers a demonstrative.

et...et: *both...and*

59 ēgressus: pf. dep. pple; as often, translate the pf. dep. pple as ‘having Xed’

accipere sē: *that they...*; sē is acc. subject
 circumfūsa: pf. dep. pple; as often, translate the pf. dep. pple as ‘having Xed’

Part Two

Roman Republic

280 - 275	Pyrrhic War
264 - 241	First Punic War
218 - 201	Second Punic War
133	Tiberius Gracchus killed
107 - 100	Consulships of Gaius Marius
82 - 79	Dictatorship of Lucius Cornelius Sulla
59	First Triumvirate: Pompey, Crassus, Caesar
44	Death of Gaius Julius Caesar
43	Death of Marcus Tullius Cicero
	Second Triumvirate: Mark Antony, Lepidus, Octavian
31	Battle of Actium: Octavian defeats Mark Antony
31 – AD 14	Augustus (Octavian) is first Emperor of Rome

20a. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

Rōmānī, ā Pyrrhō, rēge Epīrī, proeliō superātī, lēgātōs Tarentum 1
ad eum dē redimendīs captīvīs mīsērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rōmānōs
erat C. Fabricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum pauper.
Pyrrhus, quī cum Rōmānīs pācem facere volēbat, lēgātīs magna
dōna obtulit, sī Rōmānīs pācem suādērent. Quamquam haec omnia 5
sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captīvōs dīcitur sine pretiō Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus, Fabriciī virtūtem admīrātus, illī sēcrētō quārtam etiam
regnī suī partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret sēcumque vīveret; cui
Fabricius ita respondit: “Sī mē virum bonum iūdicās, cūr mē vīs
corrumpere? Sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amīcitiā cupis?” Annō 10

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum: admire, wonder, 4
admodum: in great measure, very, greatly
amīcitiā, -ae f.: friendship, 5
C.: Gaius, 5
corrumpō, -ēre, -rūpī, -ruptum: ruin, 4
cūr: why?, 2
dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum: desert, 2
dōnō (1): give, bestow, 5
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
Ēpīrus, -ī m.: Epirus (in northern Greece), 3
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 3
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum: offer, 3

pauper, -is: poor
pretium, ī n.: price, value
quārtus, -a, -um: fourth, 2
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum: buy/take back, 6
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -nsum: answer, reply, 4
sēcrētō: secretly
sīn: but if; if, however
sine: without, 5
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum: spurn, reject, 3
suādēō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum: persuade/urge, 3
Tarentum, -ī n.: Tarentum
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum: live, 4

- 1 **ā Pyrrhō:** abl. of agent with PPP
rēge: in apposition to Pyrrhō; Epirus is a region in northeastern Greece. Pyrrhus is a relative of Alexander the Greek
proeliō: *in...*; abl. means or place where
superātī: PPP superō
Tarentum: *to...*; acc. place to which, towns and cities do not employ ‘ad’
2 **dē redimendīs captīvīs:** *about...*; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as gerund (-ing) + obj.
inter: *among...*
3 **bellō:** *in (respect to)...*; abl. of respect
4 **lēgātīs:** dat. ind. object
5 **sī...suādērent:** *if they persuaded;* protasis of a fut. more vivid condition (sī fut., fut) in an implied ind. disc.: ‘he offered THAT he would give many gifts, if they persuaded...’ in ind. disc. in secondary sequence a fut. protasis becomes impf. subj.

- haec omnia:** nom. neut. pl., add ‘things’
6 **Rōmam:** accusative, place to which
mīsisse: pf. inf. mittō following dīcitur
7 **admīrātus:** pf. dep. pple is often translated ‘having X’ and may govern an acc. obj.
illī: *to that one;* dat. ind. obj., i.e. Fabricius
8 **regnī suī:** partitive gen. with partem
sī...dēsereret...vīveret: *if he deserted...*; see note 5; protasis in implied fut. more vivid: ‘he offered THAT he would...if...’
sēcumque: et cum sē
cui: *to this one;* a connective relative, dat. in obj.; English prefers to use a demonstrative
9 **sī...iūdicās,...vīs:** *if...*; two pres. ind. verbs in a simple pres. condition; 2s volō
10 **Sīn malum (me iūdicās):** *but if...*; sīn = sī nē; ellipsis: add a verb and dir. obj. in this pres. simple condition
Annō interiectō: abl. abs.

20b. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

interiectō, omnī spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae 21
 ablātā, Fabricius, consul factus, contrā eum missus est. Cumque
 vīcīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte ad
 Fabricium vēnit eīque pollicitus est, sī praemium sibi prōposuisset,
 sē Pyrrhum venēnō necātūrum. Hunc Fabricius vīnctum ad 25
 Pyrrhum remīsīt atque eum certiōrem fēcīt quae medicus pollicitus
 esset. Tum rēx admīrātus eum dīxisse fertur: “Ille est Fabricius, quī
 difficilīus ab honestāte quam sōl ā suō cursū potest āvertī.”

Fabricius cum apud Pyrrhum rēgem lēgātus esset, cum Cīneā,
 lēgātō Pyrrhī, sermōnem contulit. Hic dīxit quendam philosophum 30

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum: admire, wonder, 4
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: take away, carry away, 5
āvertō, -ere, -vertī: turn aside, turn away, 3
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6
Cīneas, -ae m.: Cineas
conciliō (1): reconcile, win over, 2
conferō, -ferre, -tulī: bring together, collect, 4
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6
difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 2
hic: here
honestās, -tātis f.: integrity, respectability

interiaciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: put in
medicus, -ī m.: doctor, physician, 2
necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6
philosophus, -ī m.: philosopher, 2
polliceor, -cērī, -cītus sum: promise, offer, 4
praemium, -ī n.: reward, prize
prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: set forth, 3
remittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send back, 3
sermō, -ōnis n.: conversation, discourse, 2
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
venēnum, -ī n.: poison, 3
vīcīnus, -a, -um: neighboring, 3
vīnciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum: bind, tie

21 **omnī spē...ablātā:** abl. abs., omnī is a 3rd decl. i-stem adj.

pācis...conciliandae: of...; objective gen. with spē; perform a gerundive-gerund flip. and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.

22 **consul:** nom. pred. following PPP faciō
Cumque...habērent: cum-clause with impf. subj.

23 **ipse:** (he) himself; i.e. Fabricius; the two camps were near each other
nocte: at...; abl. of time when

24 **eīque:** and to whom; dat. ind. obj., dat. sg. of is, ea, id

pollicitus est: pf. dep. polliceor
sī...prōposuisset, sē...necātūrum (esse): that, if he would..., he would...; a fut. more vivid (sī fut. (pf.), fut.) in ind. disc. becomes sī impf (plpf) subj. + fut. inf. in ind. disc.; in secondary sequence, what was originally a fut. pf. protasis (prōposuerit) becomes plpf.

subj.; the reflexives sibi and sē refer to the subject of the main verb: Pyrrhus

25 **hunc...vīnctum:** i.e. the medicus
certiōrem fēcīt: made...more certain; i.e. informed, a common idiom in Caesar

26 **quae...pollicitus esset:** what...; ind. question governs a plpf. dep. subj.

27 **admīrātus:** pf. dep. pple is often translated ‘having X’ and may govern an acc. obj.

dīxisse: pf. inf.

fertur: is reported; another idiom

28 **difficilīus:** with more difficulty; comparative adv.

ab honestāte...ā...: from...; separation
quam...potest...: than...; quam is an adv. introducing a clause of comparison

āvertī: pres. pass. inf.

29 **cum...esset:** when...; with impf. subj. sum
apud...: at the house/dwelling of...+ acc.

Hic: this one; i.e. Cineas

Quendam philosophum: that...; ind. disc.

20c. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

esse Athēnīs, quī dīceret omnia quae facerēmus ad voluptātem esse 31
referenda. Tum Fabricium exclāmāsse ferunt: “Utinam id hostibus
nostris persuādeāmus, quō facilius vincī possint, cum sē
voluptātibus dederint!” Nihil magis ab eius vītā aliēnum erat quam
voluptās et lūxus. Tōta eius suppellex argentea ex salīnō ūnō 35
cōnstābat et ex patellā ad ūsum sacrōrum, quae corneō pediculō
sustinēbātur. Cēnābat ad focum rādīcēs et herbās, cum lēgātī
Samnītiū ad eum vēnērunt magnamque eī pecūniā obtulērunt;
quibus sīc respondit: “Quamdiū cupiditātibus imperāre poterō, nihil
mihi deerit; vōs autem pecūniā eīs quī cupiunt dōnāte.” 40

aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5
argenteus, -a, -um: silvery, of silver
Athēnae, -ārum f.: Athens, 2
cēnō (1): dine
constō, -stāre, -stitī: stand firm; is agreed, 5
corneus, -a, -um: of cornel wood, 2
cupiditās, -tātis f.: desire, 2
dēsum, -esse, -fuī: fail, be lacking, 2
dōnō (1): give, bestow, 5
exclāmō (1): shout out, shout, 2
facilis, -e: easy, 4
focus, -ī m.: hearth, fire-place
herba, -ae f.: plant
imperō (1): order, command, 4
lūxus, -ūs m.: luxury, splendor, 2
magis: more, 7
noster, nostra, nostrum: our

31 **Athēnīs:** locative, place where
quī dīceret: *who...*; relative clause; subj. of
a subordinate verb. in ind. disc., impf. subj.
omnia...esse referenda: *that...must be
brought back;* ind. disc. ‘are (going) to be
brought back,’ a passive periphrastic
(gerundive + sum) expresses necessity
quae facerēmus: relative clause; subj. of a
subordinate verb. in ind. disc., impf. subj.
32 **Fabricium exclāmā(vi)sse:** *that...*; ind.
disc. with pf. inf.
ferunt: *they report;* common idiom
Utinam...persuādeāmus: *Would that...*;
utinam introduces an optative subj. (subj. of
wish); pres. subj. + acc. + dat. ind. obj.
id: (*about*) *that;* acc. obj. of persuādeō
33 **quō...possint:** *in order they they may...*;

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum: offer, 3
patella, -ae f.: little dish, platter
pediculū, -ī m.: little foot
quamdiū: as long as; how long?; 2
rādīx, rādīcis f.: root; foot, base
referō, -ferre, -tulī: report, bring back, 7
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -nsum: answer, reply, 4
salinum, -ī n.: vessel of salt, salt-cellar
Samnis, (-ītis): Samnite (Italian people) 1
sīc: thus, in this way, 6
suppellex, -llectis f.: furniture, ornaments
sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 5
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice; advantage
utinam: would that...
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīctum: bind, tie
vōs: you, you all, 5

purpose; pres. subj. possum (quō = ut)
cum...dederint: *when...*; 3p pf. subj. dō,
sē, ‘themselves,’ refers to the hostēs
34 **magis aliēnum:** *more foreign;* nom. pred.
eius: i.e. of Fabricius; gen. sg. of is, ea, id
quam: *than...*; clause of comparison
36 **cōnstābat:** *consisted out of*
ad: *for...*; ad + acc. expressing purpose
sacrōrum: *sacred rites*
corneō pediculō: *by...*; abl. means
37 **ad:** *near...*
38 **et:** dat. ind. obj., is, ea, id
39 **quibus:** *to these;* connective relative
cupiditātibus: dat. obj. of imperāre
poterō, deerit: 1s fut. possum, 3s fut dēsum
40 **mihi:** *for...*; dat. of interest
dōnāte: pl. imperative

20d. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

Fabricius omnem vītam in gloriōsā paupertāte exēgit, adeōque 41
inops dēcessit ut unde dōs filiārum dārētur nōn relinqueret. Senātus
patris sibi partēs sūmpsit et, dātīs ex aerārīō dōtibus, filiās
collocāvit.

adeō: to such a degree, so, 2

aerārīum, -ī n.: treasury, 2

collocō (1): place together, arrange, set up

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī: depart, withdraw, die, 3

dōs, dōtis f.: dowry, 2

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive out; spend, 3

41 **omnem vītam:** *his entire life*; agere + vītam, ‘to spend/live life’ is a common idiom

42 **dēcessit:** i.e. departed from life; a euphemism for dying

42 **ut...relinqueret:** *that...*; result clause with impf. subj.

unde...dārētur: (*an estate*) *from which...*; a relative clause, the missing antecedent is the object of relinqueret; impf. pass. subj. of a subordinate verb in a result clause

dōs filiārum: Roman families would often

gloriōsus, -a, -um: glorious, 2

inops (1): without resources, poor, penniless

paupertās, -tātis f.: poverty

sumō, sumere, -mpsī, -mptum: take (up), 5

unde: whence, from which source, 3

entice husbands for their daughters by offering land or wealth as a dowry

43 **patris...partēs:** *the roles of father*; acc. dir. obj. i.e. after Fabricius died, the Senate interceded on his behalf and acted as a father would

sibi: *for...*; dat. of interest

dātīs...dōtibus: abl. abs.; PPP dō

44 **collocāvit:** i.e. found husbands and therefore placed the daughters in new households

21a. Regulus and the 1st Punic War

Cum p̄mō Pūnicō bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthāginiēnsēs dē 1
imperīō Sicīliae contenderent, M. Atīlius Rēgulus, consul
Rōmānus, nāvālī pugnā classem Pūnicam superāvit. Proeliō factō,
Hannō, dux Carthāginiēnsis, ad eum vēnit simulāns sē velle dē
pāce agere, rē verā ut tempus extraheret, dum novae cōpiae ex 5
Africā advenīrent. Mīlitēs Rōmānī clamāre coepērunt Rēgulum
idem facere oportēre quod Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs ante annīs in
cōsule quōdam fēcissent. Is enim tamquam in colloquium per
fraudem vocātus ā Poenīs comprehēsus erat et in catēnās
coniectus. Iam Hannō timēre incipiēbat, sed perīculum respōnsō 10

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī: come to, approach, 4
Atīlius, -ī m.: Atilius
catēna, -ae f.: chain, fetter, shackle, 2
clāmō (1): cry, shout out, 6
classis, -is f.: fleet, 4
colloquium, -ī n.: conversation, conference, 4
comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum: to grasp, seize, 5
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw, hurl, 5
contendō, -ere, -ī: strive; hasten; contend, 3
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5
extrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum: draw/pull out
fraus, fraudis f.: deceit, fraud, trickery, 3

Hannō, -ōnis m.: Hanno, 3
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 5
M.: Marcus, 5
nāvālis, -e: naval, nautical, of a ship, 2
oportet: ought; it is proper, fitting
Poenus, -a, -um: Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7
Pūnicus, -a, -um: Punic (Carthaginian), 6
respōnsum, -ī n.: response, reply, 3
Sicīlia, -ae f.: Sicily, 6
simulō (1): feign, pretend; make like, 2
tamquam: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6
timeō, -ēre, -uī: fear, dread, 2

1 **Cum...contenderent:** *when...*; impf. subj.
2 **p̄mō Pūnicō bellō:** *in...*; abl. time when
3 **imperīō Sicīliae:** i.e. control over Sicily;
Sicīliae is an objective gen.
4 **nāvālī pugnā:** abl. means with a 3rd decl.
i-stem adj. ('-ī' instead of '-e')
Proeliō factō: abl. abs., PPP faciō
5 **simulāns:** nom. sg. pres. pple; Hanno
is lying about he intentions
sē...agere: *that...talked*; ind. disc.; agō,
'carry on' can also mean 'converse' or
'talk' in this context; velle is pres. inf. volō
6 **rē verā:** *in true fact*; or 'actually'
ut...: *so that...might*; purpose, impf. subj.
7 **dum...advenīret:** *until...*; temporal clause,
8 **cōpiae:** *troops*; elsewhere 'supplies'

6 **Rēgulum...oportēre:** *that...*; ind. disc.
oportēre, 'ought,' governs an inf.; the entire
clause is governed by clamāre
7 **idem:** *the same thing*; neut. acc. sg.
quod...fēcissent: *which...*; relative clause
with plpf. subj; subj. of subordinate clause
in ind disc.
paucīs ante annīs: *a few years before*;
'before by a few years' abl. of degree of
difference with the adverb ante
in...cōsule: *to...*
8 **Is:** *he...*; i.e. Regulus
9 **vocātus:** PPP vocō
10 **coniectus (erat):** plpf. pass., supply verb
respōnsō: *with...*; abl. means respōnsum

21b. Regulus and the 1st Punic War

callidō reppulit. “Sī hoc fēceritis,” inquit, “nihilō eritis Poenīs 11
 meliōrēs.” Consul tacēre iussit eōs quī pār pārī referri volēbant, et
 conveniēs gravitātī Rōmānae respōnsum dedit: “Istō tē metū,
 Hannō, fidēs Rōmāna liberat.” Dē pāce, quia Poenus ex animō nōn
 agēbat et consul bellum gerere quam pācem facere mālēbat, nōn 15
 convēnit.

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga, L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam prīmī
 Rōmānōrum ducum trānsiērunt. Ibi, multīs castellīs expugnātīs
 magnāque praedā captā, Tūnētem occupāvērunt, quae urbs decem
 tantum milibus passuum ā Carthāgine aberat. Vulsō in Italiam cum 20

absum, -esse, āfuī: be away, be absent, 5
callidus, -a, -um: clever, skilful, adroit
castellum, -ī n.: stronghold, fort
collēga, -ae m.: colleague, partner, 5
conveniō -īre -vēnī: come together, 6
decem: ten, 2
expugnō (1): take by storm, capture, 2
fidēs, eī f.: faith, trust, loyalty, 7
gravitās, -tātis f.: weight, heaviness
Hannō, -ōnis m.: Hanno, 3
iste, ista, istud: that (of yours), those, 2
liberō (1): free, liberate, 5
mālō, malle, malū: prefer, 5
Mānlius, -ī m.: Manlius, 2
melior, melius: better, 4
metus, -ūs f.: dread, fear

mille, pl. milia: thousand, 6
nihilum, -ī n.: nothing
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 5
passus, -ūs: pace, 2
Poenus, -a, -um: Carthaginian, 7
Poenus, -a, -um: Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7
praeda, -ae f.: plunder, spoils; cattle, 7
quia: because, 2
referō, -ferre, -tulī: report, bring back, 7
repellō, -ere, -ppulī, -pulsum: drive away, 2
respōnsum, -ī n.: response, reply, 3
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: be silent, 2
tū: you, 6
Tūnēs, Tūnētis m.: Tunis (in Africa)
Vulsō, -ōnis m.: Vulso, 2

- 11 **reppulit:** *rejected*; pf. repellō
sī...fēceritis...eritis: *if you..., you will...;*
 a fut. more vivid condition; translate the
 2p fut. pf. as present with future sense; the
 pf. here denotes an action completed before
 the fut. action in the apodosis but does not
 have to be translated into English
nihilō: *not at all, in no way;* abl. of degree
 of difference with meliōrēs
Poenīs: *than...;* abl. of comparison
 12 **pār pārī referri:** *to respond like for like;*
 “equal to be returned for equal,” i.e. in a
 give and take conversation
 13 **conveniēs:** *being consistent with + dat.;*
 pple conveniō
istō...metū: *from...;* abl. separation
 14 **Hannō:** vocative, direct address

- Dē pāce...nōn convēnit:** *they did not
 agree...;* an impersonal pf. verb, which one
 may translate as active: “they agreed”
ex animō: i.e. from the heart, sincerely
agēbat: *was talking;* “was carrying on”
 15 **quam:** (*rather*) *than;* clause of comparison
 17 **prīmī:** *the first;* modifying both subjects
 18 **Rōmānōrum ducum:** partitive gen. pl.
trānsiērunt: pf. trānsēō
 18 **multīs...expugnātīs:** abl. abs.
magnā...captā: abl. abs.
 19 **quae urbs:** *which city...;* relative adj.
decem...milibus passuum: *by...miles;*
 ‘thousand of paces;’ abl. of degree of
 difference (one expects an acc. of extent)
 20 **tantum:** *only;* ‘just so much’ adv. acc.

21c. Regulus and the 1st Punic War

parte mīlitum rediit, collēgā ad agrōs vāstandōs relictō. Dum 21
 Rēgulus ita hiemem in Āfricā agit, vīlicus in agellō septem
 iugerum, quem Rēgulus cōsul habēbat, mortuus est; occāsionem
 nactus mercenārius, ablātō rūsticō īnstrūmentō, aufūgit. Ita 25
 perīculum erat nē, dēsertō agrō, alimenta uxōrī Rēgulī ac liberīs
 deessent. Dīcitur litterīs ā cōsulibus petīsse ut sibi successor
 mitterētur. At senātus agrum colī pūblicē et alimenta coniugī eius
 ac liberīs praebērī rēsque quās amīserat redimī iussit.

Īnsequentī annō Lacedaemonius quīdam, nōmine Xanthippus,
 reī mīlītāris perītissimus, Carthāginem cum conductīs vēnit. 30

agellus, -ī m.: a little field, piece of land
alimentum, -ī n.: nourishment, food, 2
āmīttō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum: lose, let go, 6
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum: take away,
 carry away, 5
aufugiō, -ere, -fūgi: flee away
collēga, -ae m.: colleague, partner, 5
colō, -ere, colūi, cultum: cultivate; worship, 3
conductus, -ī m.: hirelings, hired men
dēsērō, -ere, -uī, -sertum: desert, 2
dēsum, -esse, -fui: fail, be wanting, 2
hiems, hiemis f.: winter
īnsequor, -quī, -cūtus sum: follow, ensue, 3
īnstrūmentum, -ī n.: tool, implement
iūger, iūgeris n.: acre, a juger, 2

Lacedaemonius, -ī m.: Spartan
littera, -ae f.: letter, 2
mercenārius, -ī m.: hired, hireling
mīlītāris, -e: military, warlike, 2
nanciscor, -ī, nactus sum: obtain, meet
occāsio, -ōnis f.: opportunity, 2
perītus, -a, -um: experienced in (gen.), 2
praebēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: present, put forth, 4
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum: buy/take back, 6
rūsticus, -a, -um: rural, rustic
septem: seven, 4
successor, -ōris m.: follower, successor, 3
vāstō (1): lay waste, destroy, devastate, 3
vīlicus, -ī m.: estate-manager, steward
Xanthippus, -ī m.: Xanthippus

- 21 **mīlitum:** partitive gen.
rediit: pf. red-eō
collēgā...relictō: abl. abs.
ad...vāstandōs: *for...*; perform a gerund-
 gerundive flip and translate this noun +
 gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc.
dum...agit: *while... spends*; temporal
 clause, dum governs ind. with exact time
 and a subj. when there is expectation or
 anticipation; agō often means 'spends'
 22 **septem iugerum:** *of...*; gen. of measure
 23 **mortuus est:** pf. dep. morior
 24 **nactus:** *having attained*; PPP nanciscor
ablātō īnstrūmentō: abl. abs., PPP auferō
 25 **perīculum erat:** *there was a risk...*
nē...deessent: lest...; or 'that,' fearing
 clause with impf. subj. desum
dēsertō agrō: abl. abs.
uxōrī...ac liberīs: *for...*; dat. of interest

- 26 **dīcitur:** *he is said*
ā cōsulibus: *from...*; abl. of source
petī(vi)sse: pf. inf. petō
ut...mitterētur: *that...be...*; ind. command
sibi: *for...*; dat. of interest
 27 **At:** *but*; a strong adversative
agrum...colī, alimenta...praebērī,
rēs...redimī: *that...*; ind. disc., a series of
 three acc. + inf. clauses following iussit, the
 pf. of iubeō; pass. inf. colō, praebēō, redimō
pūblicē: *at public expense*
coniugī...ac liberīs: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.
 28 **rēs:** i.e. wealth or resouces
 29 **īnsequentī annō:** *in...*; abl. time when,
 pres. pple (3rd decl. i-stem abl. ending)
 30 **reī mīlītāris:** *military science*; gen. sg.
Carthāginem: *to...*; acc. place to which

21d. Regulus and the 1st Punic War

Carthāginiēnsibus celeriter persuāsit ut sē ducem facerent. Quō 31
factō fortūna mutāta est. Nam nōn solum exercitum Rōmānum
vīcērunt sed etiam Rēgulum imperātorem cēpērunt.

Paucīs post annīs, cum iterum dē pāce agere cōstituissent,
Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Rōmam mīsērunt quī Rōmānīs pācem 35
suādēret, et dē commūtandīs captīvīs ageret; iūre iūrandō autem
adstrictus est ut, nisi dē captīvīs impetrāret, redīret ipse
Carthāginem. Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac Poenī
mandāverant. Nam senātuī suāsit nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs
enim fractōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; reddī captīvōs 40

adstringō, -ere, -strīnxī: bind
aliter: otherwise, in some other way
cāsus, -ūs m.: misfortune, mishap; fall, 2
celeriter: swiftly, quickly, 5
commūtō (1): change, exchange, 2
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, exercitum: exercise, 3
fiō, fierī, factus sum: be made, occur, 3
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractum: break, shatter, 3
impetrō (1): attain, accomplish, 3

iterum: again, a second time, 3
iūrō (1): swear (an oath), 3
mandō (1): entrust, give, commit, 5
mutō (1): change, alter, 3
nisi: if not, unless, 7
Poenus, -a, -um: Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7
reddō -ere -didī -ditum: give back, render, 5
stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictum: draw, pull out
suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum: persuade/urge, 3
tot: so many, 2

- 31 **Carthāginiēnsibus:** dat. ind. obj.
ut...facerent: *that...*; ind. command, impf. subj. faciō governs a double acc. (acc. dir. obj. and acc. pred.)
Quō factō: *this...*; abl. abs. and connective relative: translate quō, 'which' as 'this'; Latin prefers a relative where English prefers a demonstrative
32 **nōn solum...sed etiam:** *not only...but also*
33 **vīcērunt:** pf. vincō
34 **paucīs post annīs:** *a few years later;* 'after by a few years,' abl. of degree of difference with adv. post
34 **agere:** *to discuss, to talk;* lit. 'to carry on'
35 **Romam:** acc. place to which
quī...suādēret...ageret: *who would...*; relative clause of purpose (quī = ut is)
36 **dē commūtandīs captīvīs:** *about...*; do a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc.
iūre iūrandō: *by swearing an oath;* means;

- a common noun + gerundive; perform the gerund-gerundive flip
37 **adstrictus est:** i.e. was compelled
ut...redīret: *that...*; ind. command, impf. subj. redeō
nisi...impetrāret: *if...not;* or 'unless;' subj. of subordinate verb in ind. command
ipse: *he himself*
Carthāginem, Rōmam: acc. place to which
ēgit: pf. agō
38 **aliter ac:** *otherwise than...*; ac is here an conjunction in a clause of comparison
39 **senātuī:** *the senate;* dat. ind. obj.
nē...fieret: *that...not;* neg. ind. command with impf. subj. fiō
illōs...habēre: (*and*) *that those...*; ind. disc. also governed by suāsit; supply "et"
40 **fractōs:** PPP frangō
tot cāsibus: abl. means with the PPP
reddī captīvōs: *that...*; acc. + inf. clause, subject of esse below; pass. inf. reddō

21e. Regulus and the 1st Punic War

negāvit esse ūtile; adulēscētēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē iam 41
confectum senectūte; dīxit etiam malum exemplum futūrum esse,
sī captīvī Rōmānī redimerentur. Senatus eō auctore pācem
recūsāvit Poenōsque captivōs retinuit. Rēgulus ut captīvus
coniugem parvōsque nātōs ā sē remōvit Carthāginemque rediit. Ibi 45
crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs necātus esse dīcitur.

auctor, auctōris m.: agent, creator, 3
crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 3
exemplum, -ī n.: example, 3
malus, -a, -um: bad, evil, wicked
necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6
negō (1): deny, say that...not, 4
parvus, -a, -um: small, 4
Poenus, -a, -um: Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7

- 41 **esse ūtile:** *that it is...*; ind. disc., since the acc. + inf. construction, reddī captīvōs, is the subject; the pred. ūtile is neuter in agreement; inf. sum
adulēscētēs esse: *(and) that...*; ind. disc. et: *also*; adverb
sē...confectum (esse): *(and) that...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf. conficiō; conficiō can mean 'exhausted' or 'wearied'
42 **senectūte:** abl. of cause or means (sē) **malum...futūrum esse:** *that (he)...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf. sum; add sē
43 **sī...redimerentur:** *if...*; a fut. more vivid

recūsō (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -imptum: buy/take back, 6
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum: remove
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: to hold back, 3
senectūs, -tūtis f.: old age, 2
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, supplication, 5
ūtilis, -e: useful, effective

- condition (sī fut., fut.) becomes sī + impf. subj. and fut. inf. in secondary sequence
eō auctore: *with him (being) the agent*; abl. abs.; since there is no pple for sum, the subject and predicate are placed in the abl.
44 **ut captīvus:** *as a captive*; ut introduces a clause of comparison
45 **nātōs:** *children*; 'those born' PPP nāscor
ā sē: *from...*; abl. of separation
rediit: pf. redeō
46 **crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs:** abl. means
necātus esse: pf. pass. inf. following dīcitur

22a. Hannibal and the 2nd Punic War

Carthāginiēnsēs post primum Pūnicum bellum imperium 1
opēsque in Hispaniā diligenter auxērunt. Dux huius operis
Hamilcar erat, quī imperātor primō bellō fuerat atque indignābātur
quod Carthāgō eō bellō Siciliam Sardiniamque amiserat.

Hannibal, eius filius, annōs novem nātus, patre incitante, iūrāvit 5
sē semper hostem futūrum esse populī Rōmānī. Posteā in
Hispaniam missus est. Tam similis patrī ōre vultūque erat ut mīlitēs
Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum sibi esse crēderent. Ingenium
autem erat ad rēs diversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum,
aptum. Nōn minus Hasdrubalī, imperātōrī, quī, interfectō 10

amittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6
aptus, -a, -um: fitting, suitable
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6
aurum, -ī n.: gold, 3
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7
diligēns, -ntis: diligent, careful, industrious, 2
diversus, -a, -um: different, contrary, 3
Hamilcar, -is m.: Hamilcar, 3
Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5
imperō (1): order, command, 4
incitō (1): urge on, incite
indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum: be angered, 3
ingenium, -ī n.: intellect, talent; character, 5

iūrō (1): swear (an oath), 3
novem: nine, 2
opera, -ae f.: effort, exertion, work, 3
ops, opis f.: power; pl. resources, influence, 6
pareō, -ēre, paruī: obey, submit
parvus, -a, -um: small, 4
Pūnicus, -a, -um: Punic, 6
reddō -ere -didī -ditum: give back, render, 5
Sardinia, -ae f.: Sardinia (island)
semper: always, ever, forever, 3
Sicilia, -ae f.: Sicily, 6
similis, simile: similar to, like, 2
vultus, -ūs m.: expression, face, 2

1 **post...bellum:** *after...*; post + acc.
2 **opēs:** acc. pl. ops
auxērunt: pf. augeō
huius operis: objective gen. sg., hic opus
3 **primō bellō:** *in...*; abl. time when
indignābātur: impf. dep.
4 **quod...amiserat:** *because...*; causal quod
clause with ind. denoting a cause from the
narrator's point of view; plpf. amittō
eō bellō: *in that...*; abl. of time when, eō is
a demonstrative adj., is, ea, id
5 **eius:** *his*; i.e. Hamilcar's, gen. sg.
annōs novem: *nine years (ago)*; acc. of
duration
nātus: PPP nascor
patre incitante: abl. abs. with pres. pple
6 **sē...futūrum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with
fut. inf. sum

7 **patrī:** *to...*; dat. of special adj. similis
ōre vultūque: *in...*; abl. of respect; an
example of hendiadys, using two terms to
describe one object: 'expression on his face'
ut...crēderet: *that...*; result clause
8 **Hamilcarem...esse:** *that Hamilcar was
returned as a youth again for them*;
iuvenem is a pred. acc. and redditum esse is
pf. pass. inf. reddō; sibi is a dat. of interest
9 **erat...aptum:** neut. predicative nom.
ad rēs...: *for...*; expressing purpose
pārendum atque imperandum: gerunds
(-ing) in apposition to rēs
10 **minus:** *less*; comparative adv.
Hasdrubalī, imperātōrī (carus erat): (*he
was dear*) to Hasdrubal...; dat. of reference
and apposition, add 'carus erat' from l. 11
interfectō Hamilcare: abl. abs.

22b. Hannibal and the 2nd Punic War

Hamilcare, eī successor fuit in Hispāniā, quam exercituī cārus erat. 11
 Neque Hasdrubal alium quemquam mīlitibus praeficere malēbat,
 neque mīlitēs aliō duce plūs cōnfidēbant aut audēbant.

Hasdrubale interfectō, Hannibal, nātus annōs vīgintī septem 15
 imperātor creātus, cōstituit Rōmānōs vincere, ut Carthāginem in
 pristīnam auctōritātem restitueret. Prīmum obsidiōne urbem
 Saguntīnōrum cēpit, quī sociī Hispāniēnsēs Rōmānōrum erant.
 Deinde per montēs Pyrenaeōs atque Alpēs iter difficile in Italiam
 fēcit. Ibi Rōmānōs exercitūs superāvit ad Tīcīnum flūmen, ad
 Trebiam, ad Trasummenum lacum, in Āpuliā ad Cannas. In 20

Alpēs, -ium f.: Alps

Āpūlia, -ae f.: Apulia (a region of Italy), 2

auctōritās, -tātis f.: authority, 4

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 5

Cannae, ae f.: Cannae

cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 4

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum: trust, believe, rely upon

difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 2

Hamilcar, -is m.: Hamilcar, 3

Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5

Hispāniēnsis, -is m.: Hispanic, of Hispania, 3

lacus, -ūs m.: lake, 3

mālō, malle, malūī: prefer, 5

obsidio, -iōnis f.: siege, blockade, 3

plūs, plūris: more; many, 4

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī: set/put in charge over, 2

pristinus, -a, -um: former, previous, earlier

Pyrenaeus, -a, -um: of the Pyrenees

quisquam, quidquam: any one, any thing, 2

Saguntīni, -ōrum m.: Saguntinians, of Saguntum (a city in Hispania)

septem: seven, 4

socius, -iī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7

successor, -ōris m.: follower, successor, 3

Ticinus, -iī m.: Ticinus (river), 2

Trasumennus, -a, -um: of Trasimene, 2

Trebia, -ae f.: Trebia (town) or (river)

vīgintī: twenty, 6

11 **eī successor:** *his successor*; eī is a dat. of possession and refers to Hamilcar

quam: *just as*; (tam) quam; an adverbial conjunction introducing a clause of comparison

exercituī: *to...*; dat. of reference with cārus, parallel to Hasdrubalī

12 **alium quemquam:** *someone else*; ‘anyone other;’ ‘else’ is an alternative to ‘other’

mīlitibus: *over...*; dat. of compound verb, as often, translate the prefix (here prae-) as a preposition and the dat. as the object

13 **aliō duce:** abl. abs., add the pple ‘being’

14 **Hasdrubale interfectō:** abl. abs.

nātus: PPP nascor + acc. of duration, see l. 5 (p. 74) for translation

14 **vīgintī (et) septem:** indeclinable with annōs

15 **imperātor:** nom. pred. of creātus, which in turn is a PPP modifying Hannibal
Rōmānōs vincere: *that...*; ind. disc.

ut...resitueret: *so that...might*; purpose

16 **prīmum:** *first (of all)*; adverbial acc.

obsidiōne: abl. means

19 **exercitūs:** acc. pl. 4th decl. noun

ad...ad...ad: *near...(and) near...*; or “at;” these are separate battles in separate places, supply the conjunction “et;” Hannibal killed or captured approximately 20,000+ Romans and allies at Trebia River, 15,000+ at Lake Trasimene, 30,000+ at Cannae.

22c. Hannibal and the 2nd Punic War

Āpūliam vēnerat eō cōnsiliō, ut spē libertātis sociōs Rōmānōrum 21
sollicitāret. Quīdam ex sociīs amīcitiā Hannibalis secūtī sunt, sed
multī in fidē Rōmānōrum mānsērunt. Cum optimī ducēs Rōmānī
adversus Hannibalem mitterentur, numquam tamen eum dēvincere
potuērunt. Sēdecim annōs in Italiā neque victor neque victus 25
mānsit.

amīcitiā, -ae f.: friendship, 5

Āpūlia, -ae f.: Apulia (a region of Italy), 2

dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī: conquer, overcome, 2

fidēs, eī f.: faith, trust, 7

libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2

21 **in Āpūliam:** a region in the southeast region of Italy (i.e. the heel of the boot)

21 **eō cōnsiliō:** *with this purpose, with this plan*; abl. of manner with demonstrative adj.

ut...sollicitāret: (*namely*) *so that...*; a

purpose clause in apposition to eō cōnsiliō

spē: abl. means or cause, 5th decl. spēs

22 **quīdam:** *certain ones*; a substantive

maneō, -ēre, mansī: stay, wait, wait for, 7

numquam: never, 3

sēdecim: sixteen

socius, -iī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7

sollicitō (1): worry, agitate, stir up

23 **multī:** *many (allies)*; another substantive

cum...tamen: *although...nevertheless*; a cum clause followed by tamen in the main clause is very often concessive in sense

25 **potuērunt:** pf. possum

sēdecim annōs: *for...*; acc. of duration

neque victor neque victus: *neither...nor...*

predicative nom., PPP vincō

23a. Quintus Fabius Maximus and the 2nd Punic War

Postquam Rōmānī clādem ad Trasumennum lacum accēpērunt, 1
 Q. Fabius Maximus dīctātor creātus est, et M. Minūcius Rūfus
 magister equitum. Cōnsilium erat Fabiī nullō locō cum hoste
 dēcertāre, sed finēs Rōmānōrum sōciōrumque intuērī et levibus
 proeliīs mīlitum fortitūdinem augēre. Hannibal, hōc cōnsiliō 5
 turbātus, dictātōrem invidiā onerāre cōstituit. Itaque cum ager
 Fabiī eī monstrātus esset, omnibus agrīs circā vastātīs, ūnī agrō
 dictātōris pepercit. At Fabius, missō Rōmam Quintō filiō, agrum
 vēndidit pecūniāque redāctā captīvōs Rōmānōs redēmit.

Ratiō Fabiāna bellī gerendī, propter quam Fabiō cognōmen 10
 Cūctātor datum est, Rōmānīs grāta nōn erat. Cum Minūcius,

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6
circā: about, around, 4
clādes, -is f.: disaster, destruction, loss
cognōmen, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6
Cūctātor, -is m.: Delayer, the Delayer
dēcertō (1): fight to the finish or decisively
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 6
Fabiānus, -a, -um: of Fabius
finis, -is m./f.: end, border; territory, 3
fortitūdō, -dinis f.: strength, courage
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing, grateful, 4
intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum: look over, 2
invidia, -ae f.: hatred, ill-will, unpopularity
lacus, -ūs m.: lake, 3
levis, -e: light; light-armored
locō (1): put, place, 2
M.: Marcus, 5

magister, -ī m.: Master; helmsman, teacher, 6
Minucius, -ī m.: Minucius, 3
monstrō (1): point out, show
onerō (1): load, burden, weight down
parcō, -ere, peperci: spare, refrain (dat.), 3
postquam: after, when, 6
Q.: Quintus, 2
Quintus, -ī m.: Quintus
ratiō, ratiōnis f.: account, way, method
redigō -ere -ēgī -āctum: drive/bring back, 3
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum: buy/take back, 6
Rūfus, -a, -um: Rufus
socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7
Trasumennus, -a, -um: of Trasimene, 2
turbō (1): confuse, disturb, confuse, 3
vāstō (1): lay waste, destroy, devastate, 3
vendō, -ere, vendidī: sell

- 1 **Postquam...accēpērunt:** *after...received;* temporal clause
Trasumennum lacum: Lake Trasimene
 2 **dictātor:** predicative nom. after pf. pass. creō; a dictatorship is an tradition office lasting only six months in an emergency
 3 **magister equitum:** *Master of the Horse;* second-in-command to the dictator
nullō locō: abl. place where
 4 **intuērī:** pres. dep. inf. intueor
 5 **levibus proeliīs:** *with...;* abl. of means
 6 **invidiā:** abl. means
cum...monstrātus esset: *when...;* cum clause with plpf. pass. subj., translate in the same tense

- 7 **eī:** *to him;* i.e. to Hannibal, dat. ind. obj.
omnibus...vastātīs: abl. abs.
ūnī agrō: *one farm;* dat. obj. of pf. parcō
 ūnus, a pronomial adj. has -ius in the gen. and -ī in the dat.
 8 **missō...filiō:** abl. abs., PPP mittō
Rōmam: acc. place to which
 9 **pecūniāque redāctā:** abl. abs.
 10 **bellī gerendī:** *of...;* perform a gerundive-gerund flip and translate this gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc.
propter quam: *on account of which...*
 11 **Rōmānīs:** *to the Romans;* dat. reference

23b. Quintus Fabius Maximus and the 2nd Punic War

absente dictātōre, aliquantum victōriae forte adeptus esset, lēx lāta 12
 est ut iūs magistrī equitum et dictātōris aequārētur. Iniūriam tamen
 Fabius aequō animō tulit, satis fidēns haudquāquam cum imperiī
 iūre artem imperandī aequātam esse. Legiōnēs inter dictātōrem et 15
 magistrum dīvīsaē sunt. Dēnique Minucius, temere proeliō
 commissō, ā Fabiō servātus est. Tum sub imperium dictātōris rediit
 legiōnēsque restituit et Fabium patrem appellāvit. Rōmae, ut est
 perlāta fama eius reī, omnēs Maximum laudibus ad caelum
 ferēbant. Multīs post annīs, allīs rēbus interim gestīs, Fabius 20
 mortuus est.

absum, -esse, āfuī: be away, be absent, 5
adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum: obtain, overtake 1
aequō (1): make equal, make level, 2
aliquantus, -a, -um: some, considerable
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7
caelum, -ī n.: sky
committō, -ere, -sī, -sum: commit; begin, 3
dēnique: lastly, finally, 7
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 6
fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7
fidō, -ere, fīsus sum: trust, confide, rely upon

haudquāquam: by no means whatsoever
imperō (1): order, command, 4
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 5
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 4
laus, laudis f.: praise, glory, merit, 4
legio, legiōnis f.: legion, 2
magister, -ī m.: Master; helmsman, teacher, 6
Mīnucius, -ī m.: Minucius, 3
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry, endure, 4
satis: enough, 5
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7
temere: heedlessly, rashly, blindly

12 **absente dictātōre:** abl. abs.; pres. pple.
 absum
aliquantum victōriae: *some victory*; ‘some
 amount of victory,’ an appositional gen.
forte: *by chance*; abl. as adverb, from fors
adeptus esset: plpf. dep. subj. adipīscor
 in a cum clause
lāta est: *was proposed*; ‘was brought (up)’
 pf. pass. ferō; ferre and referre legem is an
 idiom for proposing a law
 13 **ut...aequārētur:** (*namely*) *that...*; ind.
 command in apposition to lēx
iūs: *legal right, legal authority*
 14 **aequō animō:** *with a level head*; abl. of
 manner
tulit: *endured*; pf. ferō
satis: *sufficiently*; adv.
haudquāquam...aequātam esse: *that...*;

ind. disc., artem is acc. subj. with pf. pass.
 inf. aequō, all governed by pres pple fidō
imperandī: *of...*; gen. sg. gerund (-ing)
 16 **temere...commissō:** abl. abs., committere
 proelium is an idiom: ‘to commence battle’
 17 **ā Fabiō:** *by...*; abl. agent
rediit: pf. redeō
 18 **appellāvit:** governing a double acc.
Rōmae: *at...*; locative, place where
ut...: *as...*; a clause of comparison
 19 **perlāta est:** pf. pass. perferō
eius reī: *of this account*
Maximum: i.e. Fabius
laudibus: abl. means
 20 **multīs post annīs:** *many years later*; ‘later
 by many years,’ abl. of degree of difference
allis...gestīs: abl. abs.
 21 **mortuus est:** pf. dep. morior

24a. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

P. Cornēlius Scipiō filius erat cōnsulis quī exercituī Rōmānō in 1
proeliō ad Tīcīnum flūmen praefuerat. Fāma est patrem, cum, in eō
proeliō vulnerātus, ab hostibus circumvenīrētur, ā filiō septendecim
nātō annōs servātum esse.

Posteā cum aedilitātem peteret, tribūnī plēbis resistēbant, quod 5
nōndum ad petendum lēgitima aetās esset. Tum Scīpiō, “Sī mē,”
inquit, “omnēs Quiritēs aedīlem facere volunt, satis annōrum
habeō.” Aedīlis magnō favōre populī, nullō tribunō resistente,
creātus est. 9

aedilis, -is m.: aedile (city manager), 3
aedilitās, -tātis f.: aedileship
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
circumvenīō, -ire, -vēnī: surround
Cornēlius, -ī m.: Cornelius, 3
fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7
favor, favōris m., (1): good-will, favor, 3
lēgītimus, -a, -um: lawful, legal
nōndum: not yet, 3

- 1 **cōnsulis:** *of a consul*; with pred. filius
exercituī Rōmānō: *over...*; dat. of
compound verb; make the prefix (prae-)
into a preposition and the dat. into the obj.
2 **praefuerat:** plpf. prae-sum
Fama est: *there is a rumor that...*
patrem...servātum esse: *that...*; acc. + inf.
clause is the true subject of est above; pf.
pass. inf. servō
cum...circumvenīrētur: *when he...*; the
understood subject is the pater
3 **vulnerātus:** PPP vulnerō, modifying
the missing subject 'he'
septendecim annōs: *17 years ago*; acc. of
duration
nātō: PPP nascor modifying filiō
5 **cum...peteret:** *when...*; i.e. campaigning
for political office
tribūnī plēbis: *tribunes of the plebs*:

P.: Publius, 3
praesum, -esse, -fuī: be over, preside over, 2
Quiritēs, -ium m.: Quirites (Romans), 2
resistō, -ere, -stiffi: stand still, halt; oppose, 7
satis: enough, 5
septendecim: seventeen
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7
Ticinus, -ī m.: Ticinus river, 2
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

- Roman officials; nom. pl., the subject
quod...esset: *because...*; 'on the grounds
that...' quod + subj. suggests an alleged
cause from a character's point of view:
'because (as they claim)...'; impf. subj.
sum, translate as impf. indicative
6 **ad petendum:** *for...*; a gerund (-ing), ad +
acc. expresses purpose
6 **Sī...volunt,...habeō:** a simple pres.
condition (sī pres., pres.)
7 **inquit:** *says*; used to indicate direct disc.
facere: *make (x) (y)*; governs a double acc.
(acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
satis annōrum: acc. obj. and partitive gen.
8 **Aedilis:** predicative nom.
magnō favōre: abl. means
populī: subjective gen. sg.
nullō...resistente: abl. abs.

24b. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

Multis post annis pater Scipionis et patruus, qui bellum in 10
 Hispania gesserant, intra dies triginta ceciderunt. Comitibus edictis
 ad imperatorem creandum omnes seniores imperium Hispaniense
 accipere nolabant; tum subito P. Cornelius Scipio, quattuor et
 viginti annos natus, professus est se petere et in superiore loco
 unde conspicere posset, constitit. Deinde ad unum omnes P. Scipioni 15
 imperium esse in Hispania iusserunt. Postea tamen civis ob
 aetatem imperatoris novi dubitare incipiebant num recte fecissent.
 Scipio, hoc animadverso, contionem habuit et tam graviter disseruit
 ut animos rursus excitaret omnesque certa spe impleret.

aetas, aetatis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
animadverto, -ere, -verfi: notice; punish, 4
cadō, -e, cecidi, cāsum: fall, 4
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6
comitium, -i n.: meeting, assembly, 4
conspicō, -ere, spexi, spectrum: see, behold
constō, -stāre, -stifi: stand firm; is agreed, 5
contio, contionis f.: meeting, assembly
Cornelius, -i m.: Cornelius, 3
disserō, -ere, -sevi: discuss, speak
dubitō (1): waver, hesitate, be in doubt
edicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictum: proclaim
excitō (1): rouse, stir up; awaken, 6
Hispaniēnsis, -is m.: Hispanic, of Hispania, 3
impleo, -ere, -evi, implētum: fill, 3
incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptum: begin, 5
intra: within, inside (acc.), 2

locō (1): put, place, 2
nolō, nolle, nolui: not...wish, be unwilling, 4
num: surely...not?; whether
ob: on account of, because of, 5
P.: Publius, 3
patruus, -a, -um: uncle, paternal uncle
profiteor, -eri, professus sum: declare, 2
quattuor: four, 5
recte: rightly, justly
rursus: again, backward, back, 2
senex, senis m.: old man, 2
subito: immediately, straightaway, 3
superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 3
triginta: thirty, 3
unde: whence, from which source, 3
viginti: twenty, 6

10 **multis post annis:** *many years later*; 'later by many years,' abl. of degree of difference
 11 **cecidērunt:** pf. cadō
comitibus edictis: abl. abs.
 31 **ad...creandum:** *for...*; perform a gerund-gerundive flip. Translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
 12 **seniores:** *older men*; comparative
 13 **quattuor...annos:** *...(ago)*; acc. of duration
 14 **natus:** PPP nascor
professus est: pf. dep. profiteor
se petere: *that...*; ind. disc., i.e. he is campaigning for (seeking) the office
 15 **unde...posset:** *from where he would...*;

a relative clause of purpose with impf. subj. possum and pass. inf.
constitit: *he stood*; or 'he stopped'
ad unum: *to the man*; qualifying omnēs
P. Scipioni...esse: *that Scipio has...*; ind. disc.; dat. of possession + esse can often be translated as subject + verb 'have'
 17 **num...fecissent:** *whether...*; ind. question with plpf. subj. faciō
 18 **hoc animadverso:** abl. abs.
graviter: adv. from 3rd decl. gravis, -e
 19 **ut...excitaret...impleret:** *that...*; result clause with impf. subj.
certa spe: abl. means

24c. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

Quīnque annōs in Hispaniā bellum adversus Carthāginiēnsēs 20
 continuō cursū victōriarū gessit. Exercitūs hostium ex Hispāniā
 expulit et amīcitiās gentium Hispāniēnsium sibi conciliāvit. Multa
 narrantur dē Scīpiōnis mānsuētūdine in miserōs et dē cōmitāte in
 hostēs ac barbarōs. Virginem Hispānam, captam Carthāgine Novā,
 quae Alluciō, prīncipi Celtibērōrum, dēspōnsa erat, spōnsō trādīdit. 25
 Magnum quoque aurī pondus, quod virginis parentēs ad
 redimendam filiā attulērunt, spōnsō dedit. Allucius, ut
 beneficium remūnerārētur, domum profectus ad Scīpiōnem cum
 delēctīs mīlle et quadringentīs equitibus revertit. Massivam

afferō, -ferre, -tulī, -latum: bring, 2
Allucius, -ī m.: Allucius, 2
amīcitiā, -ae f.: friendship, alliance, 5
aurum, -ī n.: gold, 3
barbarus, -a, -um: barbarian, foreigner
beneficium, -ī n.: favor, benefit, kindness
Celtibērī, -ōrum m.: Celtiberians (people) 1
comitās, -tātis f.: friendliness, kindness, 4
continuus, -a, -um: continuous, successive, 3
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 3
dēspōndō, -ere, -spōndī: betroth, 3
eques, equitīs m.: horseman, rider, 6
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum: drive out
Hispāniēnsis, -is m.: Hispanic, of Hispania, 3

Hispānus, -a, -um: Hispanic, of Hispania
mansuētūdō, -inis f.: clemency, mildness
Massiva, -ae m.: Massiva (a person)
mille, pl. milia: thousand, 6
miser, misera, miserum: sad, gloomy, 2
narrō (1): relate, tell, narrate, 2
parēs, parentīs m.: parent, ancestor, 4
pondus, ponderis n.: weight, 6
quadringentī, -ae, -a: four hundred, 1
quīnque: five, 4
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum: buy/take back, 6
remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum: pay back
revertō, -ere, reversī: turn back, return
spōnsus, -ī m.: betrothed man, bridegroom, 2
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7

- 20 **Quīnque annōs:** *for...*; acc. of duration
 21 **continuō cursū:** abl. of manner
gessit...conciliāvit: Scipio is subject
exercitūs: acc. pl. 4th decl. noun
hostium: gen. pl. 3rd decl. i-stem noun
gentium Hispāniēnsium: gen. pl.
 22 **sibi:** *for himself*
Multa: *many things*; substantive
 23 **in miserōs:** *toward...*
in hostēs ac barbarōs: *toward...*
 24 **captam:** PPP capiō modifying fem. sg.
 virginem
Carthāgine Novā: *in...*; locative, place
 where; a colony in Spain
 25 **Alluciō:** *to Allucius*; dat. ind. obj
prīncipi: dat. apposition
Celtibērī: i.e. Gauls inhabiting the Iberian

- peninsula (modern Spain)
spōnsō: dat. ind. obj.
trādīdit: pf. trādō
 26 **aurī:** gen.
quod...attulērunt: *which...*; relative
 clause, 3p pf. afferō
ad redimendam filiā: *for...*; expressing
 purpose; perform a gerund-gerundive flip
 and translate this noun + gerundive as a
 gerund (-ing) + acc.
 27 **ut...remūnerārētur:** *so that...might*;
 purpose; impf. pass. subj.
domum: *to...*; acc. place to which
 28 **profectus:** pf. dep. pple proficiō, as
 often, translate as 'having Xed'
 29 **delēctīs:** PPP dēligō modifies equitibus
mille et quadringentīs: 1,400

24d. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

adulescentem, captivum Āfrum, restituit avunculō Masinissae 30
Numidārum rēgī, quī cum equitatū subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus
vēnerat.

Scīpiō, receptā Hispaniā, gloriam cōficiendī bellī spectāre
coepit. Cōstituit prius conciliāre rēgēs Āfrōs, Syphācem et
Masinissam, quī sociī Carthāginiēnsium erant. Syphāx colloquium 35
cum duce Rōmānō postulāvit. Scīpiō ab Carthāgine Novā
profectus forte invectus est in rēgium portum eō ipsō tempore quō
Hasdrubal, dux Carthāginiēnsis, quī Hispaniā pulsus erat. Rōmānus
et Carthāginiēnsis, quamquam hostēs erant, ā Syphāce in hospitium

Āfrus, -a, -um: African, 2
avunculus, -ī m.: uncle, mother's brother
colloquium, -ī n.: conversation, conference, 4
equitatus, -ūs m.: cavalry
glōria, -ae f.: glory, fame, 3
Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5
hospitium, ī n.: hospitality; banquet, 2
invehō, -ere, -vexī, -ctum: convey/ride into, 3
Masinissa, -ae m.: Masinissa, Numidia king 4
Numida, -ae m.: Numidian; a nomad; 2

- 30 restituit: *he restored*; i.e. released
avunculō: *back to (his)...*; dat. of interest
Masinissae...rēgī: dat. in apposition
31 subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus: *as assistance
for the Carthaginians*; a double dative (dat.
of purpose and dat. of interest)
33 receptā Hispaniā: abl. abs., PPP recipiō
cōficiendī bellī: *of...*; perform a gerund-
gerundive flip and translate the noun +
gerundive as gerund (-ing) + acc. obj.
34 cōstituit: *he decided*
prius: *first*; lit. 'earlier,' comparative adv.
35 Carthāginiēnsium: gen. pl.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6
portus, -ūs m.: harbor, part
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5
prior, prius: before, first, previous, sooner, 5
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take, 4
rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6
socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7
spectō (1): watch, look at, 2
subsidiū, -ī n.: assistance, reinforcement
Syphāx, Syphācis m.: Syphax, 6

- 37 profectus: pf. dep. pple proficīscor, as
often, translate as 'having Xed'
forte: *by chance*; abl. as adverb; fors
invectus est: pf. dep. invehor
eō ipsō tempore: *at this...*; abl. time
when, eō is a demonstrative adj.
quō (tempore): *at which (time)...*;
relative pronoun, abl. of time when
38 Hispaniā: *from...*; abl. of separation
pulsus erat: plpf. pass. pellō
39 ā Syphāce: *by...*; abl. of agent
in hospitium: *to a banquet*

24e. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

invītātī eōdem lectō accubuērunt. Tanta autem inerat comitās 40
Scīpiōnī ut Hasdrubal nōn minus quam Syphāx Rōmānum
admirārētur. Scīpiō cum Syphāce foedere factō Novam
Carthāginem rediit.

Posteā iter longum per Hispāniam fēcit, ut cum Masinissā
quoque colloquerētur, quem comitāte atque maiestāte facile 45
conciliāvīt. Numida grātiās ēgit quod Scīpiō frātris filium
remīssisset dīxitque sē velle in fidē atque amīcitiā populī Rōmānī
esse; Rōmānōs, sī Scīpiōnem ducem in Āfricam mitterent, brevī
tempore Carthāginem captūrōs esse. Scīpio, fidē datā acceptāque,
in castra rediit atque mox Rōmam profectus est. 50

accumbō, -ere, accubuī: recline
admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum: admire, wonder, 4
amīcitiā, -ae f.: friendship, 5
brevis, -e: short, brief, 5
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum: converse
comitās, -tātis f.: friendliness, kindness, 4
facilis, -e: easy, 4
fidēs, eī f.: faith, trust, 7
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5
grātiā, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks, 3
Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5

insum, -esse, -fuī: be in, 2
invītō (1): invite, summon, 2
lectus, -i m.: couch, bed, 2
longus -a, -um: long, 2
maiestās, -tātis f.: splendor, dignity, honor
Masinissa, -ae f.: Masinissa, 4
mox: soon, 4
Numida, -ae m.: a nomad; Numidian, 2
parvus, -a, -um: small, 4
remittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send back, 3
Syphāx, Syphācis m.: Syphax, 6

- 40 **invītātī:** PPP invītō with both subjects
eōdem lectō: *on...*; abl. of time where
accubuērunt: referring to the practice
of lying down and dining
41 **Scīpiōnī:** *in...*; dat. of compound verb;
treat the prefix (in-) as a preposition and
employ the dat. as an object
ut...admirārētur: *that...*; result clause
with impf. dep. subj. admīror governing an
acc. obj.
nōn minus: *no less*; comparative adv.
42 **foedere factō:** abl. abs., PPP faciō
43 **Novam Carthāginem:** place to which
rediit: pf. redeō
44 **ut...colloquerētur:** *so that...might...*;
purpose with impf. dep. subj.
45 **quem...conciliāvīt:** *whom...*; relative, the
antecedent is Masinissā
comitāte atque maiestāte: abl. means
facile: *easily*; adv.

- 46 **Numida:** *the Numidian*; i.e. Masinissa
grātiās ēgit: pf. agō; agō grātiās is an
idiom for ‘I give thanks’
quod...remīssisset: *because...*; causal
quod clause with plpf. subj. for alleged
cause
47 **sē velle...esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with inf.
volō and sum
48 **Rōmānōs...captūrōs esse:** *that...*; ind.
disc. with pf. pass. inf. capiō
sī...mitterent...captūrōs esse: *if...sent...*
would...; in a fut. more vivid condition (sī
fut., fut.) in ind. disc. the apodosis becomes
a fut. inf. and the protasis becomes impf.
subj.
ducem: *as leader*; acc. apposition
brevī tempore: *in...*; abl. of time when
49 **Carthāginem:** *the Carthaginian*
fidē...acceptā: abl. abs.
50 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor

24f. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

Cum ibi consul ingentī favōre factus esset, Sicilia eī prōvincia 51
 dēcrēta est permissumque ut in Āfricam trānsīret. Dum in Siciliā
 bellum parat, Rōmam ab inīmicīs eius nūntiātum est imperātorem
 exercitumque Syrācūsārum amoenitāte licentiāque corrupī.
 Lēgātīs ā senātū Syrācūsās ad haec cognōscenda missīs, Scīpiō 55
 mīlitēs in terrā dēcurrentēs, classem in portū simulācrum nāvālis
 pugnae ēdentem, armāmentāria, horrea, bellī alium apparātum
 ostendit; tantaque admīratiō lēgātōs cēpit ut satis crēderent aut illō
 duce atque exercitū vincī Carthāginiēnsēs aut nūllō aliō posse.
 Senātus igitur cēnsuit ut Scīpiō quam primum in Āfricam trānsīret. 60

admīratiō, -nis f: admiration, astonishment, 3
amoenitās, -tātis f.: pleasantness
apparātus, -ūs m.: equipment, tool
armāmentārium, -ī n.: armory, arsenal
cēnsēō, -ēre, cēnsuī: judge, estimate
classis, -is f.: fleet, 4
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 4
corrupō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: ruin, 4
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7
dēcurnō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, decree, 5
dēcurnō, -ere, -cururrī: run down, 3
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: put forth, display, 5
favor, favōris m., (1): good-will, favor, 3
horreum, -ī n.: granary, storehouse, barn

inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6
licentia, -ae f.: license, freedom, 2
nāvālis, -is m.: naval, nautical, of a ship, 2
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7
ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
permittō -ere -mīsī: send, entrust, permit, 3
portus, -ūs m.: harbor, part
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7
satis: enough, 5
Sicilia, -ae f.: Sicily, 6
simulācrum, -ī n.: likeness, image
Syrācūsae, -ārum f.: Syracuse (city), 2
terra, -ae f.: land, earth, 7
vinciō, -ire, vīnxī, vīctum: bind, tie

51 **cum...factus esset:** *when he...*; cum clause with plpf. pass. subj.; consul is a predicative nom.
ingentī favōre: *with...*; abl. of manner
eī: *to him;* dat. ind. obj., is, ea, id
 52 **dēcrētā est:** *i.e. by the Senate*
permissumque (est): *and it was permitted (for him);* impersonal pf. pass. permittō
ut...trānsīret: *that...*; ind. command
 53 **eius:** gen. sg. is, ea, id
nūntiātum est: *it was...*; impersonal pf. pass. nūntiō
imperātorem...corrupī: *that...*; ind. disc. with pres. pass. inf.
 54 **amoenitāte licentiāque:** *by...*; abl. of means
 55 **Lēgātīs...missīs:** abl. abs., PPP mittō
Syrācūsās: *to...*; acc. place to which; the name of the city Syracuse is plural in form
ad haec cognōscenda: *for...*; perform a

gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
Scīpiō...ostendit: main verb is in l. 58
 56 **dēcurnentēs:** pres. pple
nāvālis pugnae: objective gen.
 57 **ēdentem:** *presenting;* pres. pple modifying classem
 58 **ut...crēderet:** *that...*; result clause with impf. subj.
satis: sufficiently
aut...vincī ...posse: *that the Carthaginians were able...*; ind. disc., Carthāginiēnsēs is acc. subject; vincī is pass. inf. with posse
aut...aut: *either...or...*
illō duce...exercitū: *by...*; abl. of agent
 60 **ut...trānsīret:** *that...*; ind. command
quam primum: *as soon as possible*

24g. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

Scīpiōnī in Āfricam advenientī Masinissa sē coniūnxit cum 61
parvā manū equitum. Syphāx, quī ā Rōmānīs ad Poenōs dēfēcerat,
captus est Rōmamque missus. Dēnique Carthāginiēnsēs, salūte
desperātā ob multās victōriās Scīpiōnis, Hannibalem ex Italiā
revocāvērunt. 65

Frendēns gemēnsque ac vix ā lacrimīs temperāns dīcitur
lēgātōrum verba audīsse. Respexit saepe Italiae lītora, sē accusāns
quod nōn victōrem exercitum statim ab Cannēnsī pugnā Rōmam
dūxisset. Zamam vēnit, quae urbs quīnque diērum iter ab 70
Carthāgine abest. Inde praemissī speculātōrēs exceptī sunt ab
custōdibus Rōmānīs et ad Scīpiōnem dēductī. Ille autem iussit eōs
per castra circumdūcī et ad Hannibalem dīmīsīt.

absum, -esse, āfuī: be away, be absent, 5
accūsō (1): accuse, blame, reprimand, 3
adveniō, -īre, -vēnī: come to, approach, 4
Cannēnsis, -e: of Cannae
circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -: lead around
coniungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum: join, 2
custōs, custōdis m.: guard, doorkeeper, 3
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum: lead away
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail; defect, 3
dēnique: lastly, finally, 7
dēspērō (1): despair, feel no hope, 3
dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -sum: dismiss, let go 5
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 6
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take out,
receive, 5
frendō, -ere, -uī: gnash teeth; grind, bruise
gemō, -ere, -uī: sigh, groan; lament
lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 2

61 **Scīpiōnī:** *with...*; dat. of compound verb
advenientī: dat. sg. pres. pple
62 **manū:** *group*
63 **Rōmam:** place to which
missus (est): 3s pf. pass., add est
salūte desperātā: abl. abs.
66 **Frendēns gemēnsque:** *while...*; nom. sg.
pres. pples, the subject is Hannibal
ā lacrimīs: *from...*; abl. of separation
temperāns: pres. pple
67 **lēgātōrum:** gen. pl.

lītus, lītoris n.: shore, beach, strand
manus, -ūs f.: hand; group, 7
Masinissa, -ae f.: Masinissa, 4
ob: on account of, because of, 5
parvus, -a, -um: small, 4
Poenus, -a, -um: Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7
praemittō, -ere, -sī, -sum: send ahead, 2
quīnque: five, 4
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look back, 3
revocō (1): call back, summon back, revoke, 3
saepe: often, 3
salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 4
speculātōr, -ōris m.: scout, explorer, spy
statim: immediately, on the spot, at once, 5
Syphāx, Syphācis m.: Syphax, 6
temperō (1): refrain from, keep from
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4
Zama, -ae f.: Zama

audi(vi)sse: pf. inf. audiō
respexit: *looked back at...*; Hannibal left
Italy to return to Carthage
accusāns: pres. pple, Hannibal is subject
68 **quod...dūxisset:** *because...*; quod + plpf.
subj. for alleged cause (character's view)
victōrem: *as victor*; in apposition to
exercitum
69 **Quae urbs:** *which city...*; relative adj.
quīnque diērum: *of...*; gen. description
eōs...circumdūcī: *that...*; ind. disc., pass.

24h. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

Deinde, quaerente colloquium Hannibale, diēs locusque 73
cōnstitutur. Itaque congressī sunt duo maximī suae aetātis ducēs.
Paulisper tacuērunt admirātiōne mūtuā dēfixī. Cum vērō dē 75
condiciōnibus pācis inter eōs nōn convēnisset, ad suōs sē
recēpērunt renūntiantēs armīs dēcernendum esse. Commissō
deinde proeliō, Hannibal, victus, cum paucīs equitibus fūgit.

Pāx Carthāginiēnsibus data est eīs condiciōnibus quae Rōmānōs
suae partis orbis terrārum dominōs facerent. Pāce terrā marique 80
partā, Scīpio, exercitū in nāvēs impositō, Rōmam profectus est.
Per Italiam laetam pāce nōn minus quam victōriā iter fēcit. Nōn

admīrātiō, -nis f.: admiration, astonishment, 3
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
colloquium, -ī n.: conversation, conference, 4
committō, -ere, -sī, -sum: commit; begin, 3
condicio, -ciōnis f.: arrangement, state, 3
congregior, -ī, -gressus sum: gather
conveniō -īre -vēnī -ntum: come together, 6
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5
dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fictum: fix, fasten down 1
dominus, -ī m.: master, 2
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 6
impōnō, -ere, -posuī: place upon, impose, 2
laetus, -a, -um: happy, joyful, glad, 4

mare, maris n.: sea, 6
mūtuus, -a, -um: mutual, reciprocal
nāvis, nāvis f.: ship, boat, 2
orbis, -is m.: sphere, orb, 2
pariō, -īre, peperī, partum: produce, create
parvus, -a, -um: small, 4
paulisper: a little while, a little, somewhat, 2
quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum: seek, ask,
inquire, 6
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take, 4
renuntiō (1): bring back word, report, 2
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: be silent, 2
terra, -ae f.: land, earth, 7

73 **quaerente Hannibale:** abl. abs., pres. pple
diēs: *time*
74 **congressī sunt:** pf. dep. congregior
suae aetātis: gen. of description; i.e. of
their generation
75 **admīrātiōne mūtuā:** *with...*; manner
dēfixī: PPP, nom. pl.
vērō: *indeed*; adl. as adverb, vērūs
76 **convēnisset:** *it had been agreed*; i.e. they
had agreed; impersonal plpf. subj.
ad suōs (militēs): supply noun
sē recēpērunt: sē recipere is a common
idiom for ‘retreated’ or ‘returned’
77 **renūntiantēs:** pres. pple
armīs dēcernendum esse: *that it must...*;
ind. disc., lit. ‘it is (going) to be decided...’
an impersonal passive periphrastic
(gerundive + esse) expressing necessity
commissō proeliō: abl. abs., in this idiom

committere often means ‘commence’
78 **victus:** PPP vincō
79 **eīs condiciōnibus:** *with...*; abl. of manner,
eīs is a demonstrative
quae...facerent: *which would...*; a relative
clause of characteristic with impf. subj.; the
verb governs a double acc.
80 **suae partis:** *of their own part...*; objective
gen. with dominōs
orbis terrārum: *of the world*; ‘of the
sphere of lands,’ an idiom
pāce...partā: abl. abs., PPP pariō
terrā marīqu: abl. place where, marī is a
3rd decl. neuter i-stem ablative
exercitū...impositō: abl. abs.
81 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor
82 **pāce, victōriā:** *because of...*; abl. of cause
nōn minus: *no less...*; comparative adv.

24i. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2nd Punic War

urbēs modo ad habendōs honōrēs effūsae sunt, sed agrestium etiam 83
turba viās obsidēbat. Triumphō omnium clārissimō urbem est
invectus cognōmenque Āfricanum sibi sūmpsit. 85

Āfricānus, -a, -um: Africanus, 2
agrestis, -e: of the fields, rural, rustic
cognōmen, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour out, shed, 3
invehō, -ere, -vexī, -ctum: convey/ride into, 3

83 **Nōn modo...sed etiam:** *not only...but also*
ad habendōs honōrēs: *for...*; expressing purpose; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as gerund (-ing) + acc. obj.
effūsae sunt: *poured out*; lit. 'were poured out'
agrestium: *of the country-folk*; a

modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 3
obsidēō, -ēre, -sedī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5
sumō, sumere, -mpsī, -mptum: take (up), 5
Triumphus, -ī m.: Triumph (procession), 4
turba, -ae f.: crowd, throng; tumult

substantive; gen. pl.
84 **Triumphō...clārissimō:** *with...*; abl. of means; a parade
invectus est: Scipio is the subject; this pf. pass. verb governs an acc.
85 **sibi:** *for...*; dat. of interest
sūmpsit: Scipio is again subject. The name 'Africanus' was added to his name.

25a. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE

Tiberius et Gaius Gracchī Scīpiōnis Āfricānī ex filiā nepōtēs 1
erant. Hōrum adulēscētia bonīs artibus et magnā omnium spē
exācta est; ad ēgregiam enim indolem optima accēdēbat ēducātiō.
Erant enim dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris ā puerīs doctī et Graecīs
litterīs ērudītī. Maximum mātrōnīs ōrnāmentum esse līberōs bene 5
īnstitūtōs meritō putābat māter illa sapientissima. Cum Campāna
mātrōna, apud illam hospita, ōrnāmenta sua, illō saeculō
pulcherrima, ostentāret eī muliēbriter, Cornēlia trāxit eam sermōne,
quōusque ē scholā redīrent līberī. Quōs reversōs hospita
ostendēns, “Haec,” inquit, “mea ōrnāmenta sunt.” Nihil quidem 10

accēdō, -ere, -cessī: approach, add to, 2
adulēscētia, -ae f.: youth
Āfricānus, -a, -um: Africanus, 2
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7
bene: well
Campānus, -a, -um: of Campania (region)
Cornēlia, -ae f.: Cornelia, 3
diligentiā, -ae f.: diligence, attentiveness, 2
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum: teach, tell, 4
ēducātiō, -tiōnis f.: training, rearing
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
ērudīō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: educate, instruct, 2
exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: drive out; spend, 3
Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 3
Gracchus, -ī m.: Gracchus, 4
Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 4
hospita, -ae f.: guest; host, 2
indoles, -is f.: natural or inborn ability
līberī, -ōrum m.: children, 3

littera, -ae f.: letter; pl. literature 2
mātrōna, -ae f.: married woman, matron, 2
meritus, -a, -um: deserved, due, just
muliēbriter: in a womanly way
nepōs, nepōtis m.: grandson, decendent, 3
ōrnāmentum, -ī n.: jewelry, adornment, 3
ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
ostentō (1): show
pulcher, -ra, -rum: pretty, beautiful, 2
putō (1): think
quōusque: until what time, till when
revertor, -ī reversus sum: turn back, return, 2
saeculum, -ī n.: generation, lifetime
sapiens, sapientis: wise
schola, -ae f.: school, place of learning, 3
sermō, -ōnis n.: conversation, discourse, 2
Tiberius, -ī m.: Tiberius, 5
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum: draw, drag

- 1 **Tiberius et Gaius Gracchī:** *Tiberius Gracchus and Gaius Gracchus*
- Scīpiōnis Āfricānī:** *of Scipio Africanus*
- 2 **hōrum:** gen. pl. of hic; i.e. the two brothers
- bonīs...spē:** *with...;* abl. of manner
- omnium:** subjective gen., i.e. all hope that...
- 3 **enim:** *for...;* translate first in the sentence
- 4 **erant...doctī...ērudītī:** *they...;* plpf. pass.
- diligentiā Cornēliae mātris:** abl. of means, Cornelia is the name of their mother
- ā puerīs:** *from boyhood*
- Graecīs litterīs:** abl. of means; in the plural, litterīs often refers to ‘literature’
- 5 **Maximum...esse...meritō:** *that...;* ind. disc. governed by putābat

- 6 **īnstitūtōs:** *trained;* PPP
- meritō:** *deservingly, rightly;* abl. as adv.
- Cum...ostentāret:** *When...;* impf. subj.
- 7 **apud illam:** *at the house of that one;* i.e. Cornelia; hospita is in apposition to mātrōna
- ōrnāmenta sua:** acc. obj. of ostentāret
- illō saeculō:** *in...;* abl. of time when
- 8 **eī:** i.e. to Cornelia; dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id
- trāxit...sermōne:** i.e. drew out the conversation
- 9 **quōs reversōs:** *these boys, having returned;* a connective relative: translate in English as ‘these;’ PPP in the middle (dep.) voice

25b. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE

hīs adulēscētibūs neque ā nātūrā neque ā doctrīnā dēfuit; sed 11
ambō rem pūblicam, quam tuērī poterant, perturbāre māluērunt.

Tiberius Gracchus, tribūnus plēbis creātus, ā senātū dēscīvit;
populī favōrem profūsīs largītīōnibus sibi conciliāvit; agrōs plēbī
dīvidēbat, prōvinciās novīs colōniīs replēbat. Cum autem 15
tribūniciam potestātem sibi prōrogārī vellet et palam dictitāset,
interēptō senātū omnia per plēbem agī dēbēre, viam sibi ad
rēgnūm parāre vidēbātur. Quā rē cum convocātī patrēs dēlībērarent
quidnam faciendūm esset, statim Tiberius Capitōliūm petit, manū
ad caput referēs, quō signō salūtem suam populō commendabat. 20

ambō: both, two together, 3

Capitōliūm, -ī n.: Capitoliūm, 5

colōnus, -ī m.: settler, colonist, 2

commendō (1): commend, entrust

convocō (1): call together, 4

dēbēō, -ēre, -uī, dēbitum: owe, ought, 3

dēlībērō (1): ponder, meditate, 2

dēsciscō, -ere, dēscīvī, -ītum: defect, desert

dēsum, -esse, -fuī: fail, be wanting, 2

dictitō (1): say often, insist

dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7

doctrīna, -ae f.: instruction, teaching, 2

favor, favōris m., (1): good-will, favor, 3

Gracchus, -ī m.: Gracchus, 4

hīc: here

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: take away, 2

largītio, -tīōnis f.: bribery; generosity, gift

mālō, malle, malūī: prefer, 5

manus, -ūs f.: hand; group, 7

nātūra, -ae f.: nature

palam: openly, publicly, 3

perturbō (1): disturb, throw into confusion, 3

potestās, -tātis f.: power; rule, sovereignty, 4

prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: to pour out, 2

prōrogō (1): to prolong, extend, protract

prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7

quisnam, quidnam: who pray? what pray?

referō, -ferre, -tulī: to report, bring back, 7

replēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum: to refill, fill again

salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 4

signō (1): mark out, designate

statim: immediately, on the spot, at once, 5

Tiberius, -ī m.: Tiberius, 5

tribūnicius, -a, -um: of a tribune

tueor, tuērī: look over or after, guard, 2

11 **hīs adulēscētibūs:** *for...*; dat. interest

neque...neque: *either...or...*; following the subject nihil, these correlatives are positive

ā...ā...: *from...*; abl. of separation

dēfuit: pf. dēsum

12 **rem pūblicam:** *the government, the republic;* ‘public affairs’

13 **tribūnus plēbis:** *Tribune of the Plebs;* a predicative nom. following PPP creō

14 **profūsīs largītīōnibus:** abl. abs. or means
plēbī: *among...*; dat. ind. obj.

15 **novīs colōnīs:** abl. means
cum...vellet...dictitā(vi)sset: *when...*
impf. subj. volō and plpf. subj. dicitō

16 **sibi:** *for...*; dat. of interest
prōrogārī: pass. inf.

17 **interēptō senātū:** abl. abs.

omnia...dēbēre: *that...*; ind. disc., agī is the pass. inf. of agō, ‘do’

sibi: *for...*; dat. of interest

18 **vidēbātur:** *he seemed;* impf. pass.

Quā rē: *For this reason;* ‘because of which matter,’ abl. of cause

19 **quidnam...esset:** *what...*; ind. question with passive periphrastic in the subj., equiv. to faciendūm erat (often translated as ‘must be in the present and ‘had to be’ in the past
Capitōliūm: one of the two peaks of the Capitoline Hill

20 **referēs:** nom. sg. pres. pple
quō signō: *by which...*; relative adj.
populō: dat. ind. obj.

25c. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE

Hoc nōbilitās ita accēpit, quāsī diadēma posceret, sēgniterque 21
 cessante cōnsule, Scīpiō Nāsīca, cum esset cōsobrīnus Tiberiī
 Gracchī, patriam cognātiōnī praeferēns sublātā dextrā prōclāmāvit:
 “Quī rem pūblicam salvam esse volunt, mē sequantur!” Dein
 optimātēs, senātus atque equestris ōrdinis pars maior in Gracchum 25
 irruunt, quī fugiēns dēcurrēnsque clīvō Capitōlinō frāgmentō
 subsellī ictus vītā, quam glōriōsissimē dēgere potuerat, immātūrā
 morte finīvit. Mortuī Tiberiī corpus in flūmen prōiectum est.

Capitōlinus, -a, -um: Capitoline, 4
cessō (1): be remiss, cease, delay, be idle
clīvus, -ī m.: slope
cognātiō, -tiōnis f.: kinship
cōsobrīnus, -ī m.: cousin, maternal cousin
dēcurrō, -ere, -cururrī: run down, 3
dēgō, -ere, dēgī: spend, pass (time)
dein: then, next
dexter, -ra, -rum: right (hand); favorable, 3
diadēma, -ātis n.: diadem, headress, crown, 3
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 3
finiō, -ire, -iī: limit, end, enclose, 2
frāgmentum, -ī n.: piece, fragment
glōriōsus, -a, -um: glorious, 2
Gracchus, -ī m.: Gracchus, 4
īciō, īcere, īcī, īctum: strike, pelt, hit
immātūrus, -a, -um: untimely, premature

irruō, -ere, -ruī: rush in, 2
maior, maius: greater, larger; older, 4
mors, mortis f.: death, 6
Nāsīca, -ae m.: Nasica
nōbilitās, -tātis f.: nobility, renown
optimas, -ātis m.: optimate
ōrdō, ōrdinis m.: arrangement, order, rank, 3
poscō, -ere, popōscī: ask, demand
praeferō, -ferre, -tuli: prefer, carry before
prōclāmō (1): cry out, call out
proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: project forth 2
quāsī: as if, just as, as though, 2
salvus, -a, -um: saved, preserved, safe
sēgnis, -e: sluggish, inactive, lazy, slow
subsellium, -iī n.: seat, bench
Tiberius, -ī m.: Tiberius, 5
tollō, tolle, sustuli, sublātum: raise, destroy 2

21 **nōbilitās:** *the nobility*; i.e. senatorial class
accēpit: i.e. perceived, interpreted
quāsī...posceret: a conditional clause of
 comparison governs a subj.
segniter: 3rd decl. adv. from sēgnis, -e
 22 **cessante cōnsule:** abl. abs.
 22 **cum esset...:** *although...*; cum clause with
 impf. sum is concessive in sense
 23 **cognātiōnī:** *over...*; dat. compound verb
sublātā dextrā (manū): abl. abs., PPP
 tollō; dextrā modifies a missing fem. manū
 24 **Quī:** (*those*) *who...*; the missing

antecedent is subject of sequantur
sequantur: *Let...*; or ‘should...’ a jussive
 3p pres. dep. subj.
 25 **equestris ōrdinis:** *of equestrian rank*
in...: *upon...*
 26 **fugiēns dēcurrēnsque:** *while...*; pres. pple
clīvō Capitōlinō: abl. of separation
frāgmentō: abl. means
 27 **ictus:** PPP īciō modifying Gracchus
potuerat: plpf. possum
glōriōsissimē: superlative adv.

26a. Gaius Marius

C. Marius humilī locō nātus, p̄rīma stīpēndia in Hispāniā duce 1
Scīpiōne fēcīt. Imprīmīs Scīpiōnī ob ēgregiam virtūtem cārus erat;
Scīpiō enim dīxit, sī quid sibi accidisset, rem pūblicam nūllum
alium successōrem Mariō meliōrem inventūram esse. Quā laude
excitātus Marius spīritūs dignōs rēbus quās postea gessit concēpit. 5

Postea lēgātus fuit Q. Metellī, quī bellum in Numidiā contrā
Iugurtham rēgem gerēbat. Rōmam missus, Metellum apud populum
incusāvit, quod bellum dūceret; sī sē cōnsulem fēcissent, brevī
tempore aut vīvum aut mortuum Iugurtham captūrum esse. 9

accidō, -ere, accidī: happen, fall to, 2
brevis, -e: short, brief, 5
C.: Gaius, 5
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 4
concipiō, -ere, -cēpī: receive, take in
dignus, -a, -um: worthy of, deserving (abl.)
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
excitō (1): rouse, stir up; awaken, 6
humilis, -e: on the ground, low; humble, 2
imprīmīs: in particular, especially, 3
incūsō (1): accuse, complain of, 3
invenīō, -īre, -venī, -ventum: find, 5

- 1 **humilī locō:** *from...*; abl. of source/origin; locus refers to his status or position in society; 3rd decl. i-stem abl.
nātus: PPP nascor
duce Scīpiōne: abl. abs., supply 'being' as the pple
2 **Imprīmīs:** elsewhere in p̄rīmīs
Scīpiōnī: *to...*; dat. of reference (viewpoint)
3 **sī...accidisset,...inventūram esse:** *that, if...had..., would...*; ind. disc.; originally a future more vivid condition (sī fut. pf., fut.) becomes plpf. subj. and fut. inf. in ind. disc. in secondary sequence
quid: *anything*; i.e. death; quis, quid is indefinite before sī, nisi, num, and nē
rem pūblicam: acc. subj.
4 **nūllum alium successōrem:** acc. obj.
Mariō: *than...*; abl. of comparison
Quā laude: *by this...*; connective relative
abl. of means or cause

Iugurtha, -ae m.: Jugurtha, 4
laus, laudis f.: praise, glory, merit, 4
locō (1): put, place, 2
Metellus, -ī m.: Metellus, 2
Numidia, -ae f.: Numidia, 3
ob: on account of, because of, 5
Q.: Quintus, 2
spīritus, -ūs m.: breath, spirit, inspiration
stipendium, -ī n.: pay; military service, 3
successor, -ōris m.: follower, successor, 3
vīvus, -a, -um: alive, living, 3

- 5 **rēbus:** the adj. dignus often governs an abl. of respect
quās...gessit: *which...*; relative clause
6 **fuit:** pf. sum, Marius is subject
7 **Rōmam:** place to which
missus: PPP mittō
apud: *before..., in front of...*
8 **quod...dūceret:** *because...*; 'on the grounds that...' causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character's point of view
sī...fēcisset...(sē) captūrum esse: *that if they had...he would...*; ind. disc. governed by incusāvit; see line 3; fēcissent governs a double acc.
brevī tempore: *in...*; abl. of time when
9 **aut...aut:** *either...or...*
captūrum esse: the missing acc. subj. is reflexive sē, i.e. Marius

26b. Gaius Marius

Itaque cōsul creātus in Numidiam rediit atque superāvit Bocchum, 10
rēgem Gaetulōrum, ad quem Iugurtha profūgerat. Deinde Sulla,
quaestor Mariī, persuāsit Bocchō ut Iugurtham trāderet.

Marius iterum cōsul creātus in Galliam profectus est, ubi vīcit
Teutōnēs, gentem Germānicam, quī cum Cimbrīs novās sēdēs
quaerēbant. Cum Teutōnēs vallem flūmenque medium tenērent, 15
mīlitēsque Rōmānī, quibus aquae nūlla cōpia erat, aquam
flāgitārent, Marius, “Virī,” inquit, “estis; ēn, illīc aquam habētis.”
Mīlitēs ita concitātī tam ācritē pugnāvērunt ut ducenta mīlia
hostium caederentur et nōnaginta caperentur.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, keen, 4
Bocchus, -ī m.: Bocchus, (Gaetolian king), 2
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum: kill, cut down, 4
Cimbrī, ōrum m.: Cimbri (Gallic tribe), 3
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 3
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5
ducentī, -ae, -a: two hundred, 2
ēn: Look! Behold! See there!
flāgitō (1): demand urgently, ask for, 2
Gaetulī, -ōrum m.: Gaetulians (a people) 1
Gallia, -ae f.: Gaul, 3
Germānicus, -a, -um: German
illīc: there, in that place
iterum: again, a second time, 3

10 **cōsul:** nom. pred. of PPP creō
rediit: pf. redeō
12 **Bocchō:** dat. ind. obj. of persuādeō
ut...trāderet: *that...*; ind. command
13 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor
vīcit: pf. vincō
14 **sēdēs:** *settlements*
15 **Cum...flāgitārent:** *when...*
vallem...medium: *the middle of a...*

Iugurtha, -ae m.: Jugurtha, 4
mille (pl. mīlia): thousand, 6
nōnaginta: ninety
Numidia, -ae f.: Numidia, 3
pugnō (1): fight, 3
quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum: seek, ask,
inquire, 6
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor (an official), 7
sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6
Teutōnēs, -um m.: the Teutons (Germanic
tribe), 2
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7
vallis, -is: lowland, vale

16 **quibus...erat:** dat. of possession: (1) ‘to
whom there was ...’ or (2) ‘who had’
17 **inquit:** *said*; a verb employed with direct
disc. and often inserted in the middle of the
the direct disc.
18 **ācritē:** 3rd decl. adv. from ācer
ut...caederent...caperentur: *that...*; result
clause with impf. pass.subj.
19 **hostium:** gen. pl.

26c. Gaius Marius

Insequentī annō Cimbrī etiam caesī sunt. In ipsā pugnā Marius 20
duās cohortēs Camertium, quī mīrā virtūte vim Cimbrōrum
sustinēbant, contrā lēgem cīvitāte dōnāvit. Dē quā rē postea
reprehēnsus, sē excūsāvit, quod inter armōrum strepitum verba
iūris cīvīlis exaudīre nōn potuisset.

Marius, quī semper factiōnem populārem in rē publicā secūtus 25
erat, cum senēsceret, invidēre coepit Sullae, quī dux nōbilium erat.
Itaque, cum Sulla in cōsulātū bellō Mithridāticō praefectus esset,
tribūnus quīdam lēge imperium Sullae abrogāvit Mariōque bellum
dētulit. Quā rē commōtus, Sulla, quī ex Italiā nōndum excesserat,

abrogō (1): repeal, annul, recall
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum: kill, cut down, 4
Camertēs, -ium m.: Camertes (people in
northern Italy)
Cimbrī, ōrum m.: Cimbri (Gallic tribe), 3
cohors, cohortis m.: cohort (unit of ~480) 2
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, mōtum: upset,
trouble, 2
cōsulātus, -ūs m.: consulship 6
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: offer, give over 6
dōnō (1): give, bestow, 5
exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: hear plainly, hear
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: depart, go out
excūsō (1): excuse; apologize for

- 20 **insequentī annō**: *in...*; abl. time when,
pres. ppl. (3rd decl. i-stem abl. ending)
etiam: *also*
21 **Camertium**: *of the Camertes*
mīrā virtūte: *with...*; abl. of manner
vim: acc. sg. of *vīs*
22 **cīvitāte dōnāvit**: *bestowed with*
citizenship; *dōnō* can govern acc. + dat. ind.
obj. or, as here, an acc. and abl. of means
Dē quā rē: *about...*; connective relative,
in English use the demonstrative, ‘this’
23 **quod...potuisset**: *because he had...*; or
‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause
with subj. for alleged cause from the
character’s point of view; plpf. subj.
possum; Marius is being sarcastic
24 **iūris cīvīlis**: *of civil law*

factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6
insequor, -ī, -cūtus sum: follow, ensue, 3
invidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum: envy, begrudge 1
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7
mīrus, -a, -um: amazing, wonderful, strange 3
Mithridāticus, -a, -um: Mithridatic, 2
nōndum: not yet, 3
populāris, -e: of the people, popular, 4
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī: set/put in charge over, 2
reprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum: blame, rebuke, 3
semper: always, ever, forever, 3
senescō, -ere, -uī: grow old
strepitus, -ūs m.: noise, din, rattle
sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 5

- 25 **factiōnem populārem**: *faction of the*
populares; These factions are not political
parties but instead distinguish aristocrats
who appeal to the nobility for power
(optimates) from aristocrats to appeal to the
people for power (populārēs).
secūtus erat: plpf. dep. sequor
27 **cum...praefectus esset**: *when...*; plpf.
pass. praeficiō
Mithridāticō bellō: *over...*; dat. of
compound verb
28 **lēge**: *with...*; abl. of means
Mariō: dat. ind. obj.
29 **dētulit**: pf. dēferō
Quā rē: *by this matter*; abl. of cause and
connective relative (translate as a
demonstrative ‘this’)

26d. Gaius Marius

Rōmam cum exercitū rediit et, urbe occupātā, tribūnum interfēcit 30
 Mariumque fugāvit. Marius aliquamdiū in palūde latuit; acceptā
 nāviculā in Africam trānsiit et in agrum Carthāginiēsem pervēnit.

Ibi cum in locīs sōlitāriīs sedēret, vēnit ad eum līctor Sextiliī
 praetōris, quī tum Africam obtinēbat. Ab hōc, quem numquam 35
 laesisset, Marius hūmānitātis aliquod officium exspectābat; at līctor
 dēcēdere eum dē prōvinciā iussit, nisi in sē animadvertī vellet;
 torvēque intuentem et vōcem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit
 tandem, ecquid renūtiārī praetōrī vellet. Marius, “Nūntiā,” inquit,
 “tē vīdisse C. Marium in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem.”

aliquamdiū: for some long time
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 3
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī: notice; punish, 4
C.: Gaius, 5
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī: depart, withdraw, die, 3
ecquis, ecquid: any? anyone? anything?
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send out, 3
expectō (I): look out for, wait for, await, 3
fugō (I): put to flight
hīc: here
hūmānitās, -tātis f.: culture, refinement, 2
intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum: look upon, 2
iocus, -ī m.: joke, 2
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum: harm, hurt
lateō, -ēre, latuī: lie hidden
līctor, līctorīs m.: lictor (bodyguard), 5
nāvicula, -ae f.: a small ship, boat
nisi: if not, unless, 7
numquam: never, 3

30 **Rōmam:** place to which
rediit: pf. redeō
urbe occupātā: abl. abs.
 31 **fugāvit:** note: 1st conj. fugō, fugāre means
 ‘to put to flight,’ while 3rd-io fugiō, ‘to flee’
acceptō nāviculā: abl. abs.
 32 **trānsiit:** pf. trānsēō; Marius is the subject
 34 **obtinēbat:** *held*; a praetor, consul or one
 who had served this rank previously could
 be assigned by the Senate as governor
Ab hōc (virō): *from this man*; abl. of source
quem...laesisset: *whom (Marius)...*; a
 relative clause of characteristic with plpf.
 subj. laedō; the subject is Marius
 35 **at:** *but*; a strong adversative

nuntiō (I): announce, report, 7
obtinēō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 2
occupō (I): seize, occupy, 5
officiū, -ī n.: duty, obligation, 4
palūs, palūdis f.: swamp, marsh, 2
pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come through,
 arrive, 2
praetor, -ōris m.: praetor, 3
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7
renūtiō (I): bring back word, report, 2
rogō (I): ask, 3
ruina, -ae f.: ruins, downfall, 3
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī: sit, sit down; set, 7
Sextilius, -ī m.: Sextilius (an officer)
sōlitārius, -a, -um: isolated, solitary, alone
tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6
torvus, -a, -um: grim, savage, fierce, keen
tū: you, 6

36 **dē prōvinciā:** *from...*
nisi...vellet: *unless...*; impf. subj. of
 subordinate clause in ind. disc.(eum...
 dēcēdere); impf. subj. volō
in...animadvertī: *to be punished upon
 himself*; an idiom with no English equiv.
 37 **torvē:** adv. of torvus
intuentem, ēmittentem: two pres. pples
 modifying Marium
 38 **ecquid...vellet:** *whether...anything....*;
 ind. question with impf. subj. volō, ecquid
 is an interrogative, here acc. dir. obj.
renūtiārī: pres. pass. inf.
Nūntiā: sg. imperative
 39 **tē vīdisse:** *that...*; ind. disc., pf. inf. videō

26e. Gaius Marius

Cum Sulla ad bellum Mithridāticum profectus esset, Marius, 40
 revocātus ā Cinnā, in Italiam rediit, calamitāte incēsus magis
 quam frāctus. Cum exercitū Rōmam ingressus, eam caedibus et
 rapīnīs vāstāvit; omnēs adversae factiōnis nōbilēs variīs
 suppliciōrum generibus affēcit. Quīnque diēs continuōs totidemque
 noctēs illa licentia scelerum omnium dūrāvit. Tandem Marius, 45
 senectūte et labōribus cōnfectus in morbum incidit et ingentī
 omnium laetitiā mortuus est. Cuius virī sī comparentur cum
 virtūtibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō melior an pāce
 perniciōsior fuerit.

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: affect, afflict, 2
an: or

caedēs, -is f.: slaughter, killing, 4

calamitās, -itātis f.: loss, calamity, 2

Cinna, -ae m.: Cinna (a Roman consul) 2

comparō (1): compare; prepare, collect, 2

continuus, -a, -um: continuous, successive, 3

dūrō (1): harden, last, endure, 2

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -ercitum: exercise, 3

facilis, -e: easy, 4

factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6

frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractum: break, shatter, 3

genus, -eris n.: kind, type; birth, race, 4

haud: by no means, not at all, 4

incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsun: kindle, burn, 7

incidō, -ere, -cidī: fall into, fall upon

ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum: step in, enter, 4

labor, -is m.: labor, toil, 3

laetitia, -ae f.: gladness, joy, delight

licentia, -ae f.: license, freedom, 2

magis: more, 7

melior, melius: better, 4

Mithridāticus, -a, -um: Mithridatic, 2

morbis, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 3

perniciōsus, -a, -um: destructive, ruinous

quīnque: five, 4

rapīna, -ae f.: pillage, rapine; prey

revocō (1): call back, summon back, revoke, 3

scelus, -eris n.: wickedness, villainy, crime, 2

senectūs, -tūtis f.: old age, 2

supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, supplication, 5

tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6

totidem: so many as, as many, 2

utrum: whether

varius, -a, -um: various, 3

vāstō (1): lay waste, destroy, devastate, 3

vitium, -ī n.: vice, fault, defect

40 **cum...profectus esset:** *when...*; plpf. dep. subj. proficiscor

41 **rediit:** pf. redeō

incēsus: PPP, i.e. angered

42 **quam:** *than...*; a clause of comparison

frāctus: PPP, frangō

cum exercitū: *with...*; accompaniment

ingressus: pf. dep. ingredior, as often,

translate the pple as 'having Xed'

eam: Rōmam is the antecedent

43 **adversae factiōnis:** *of opposing...*; gen. of description with omnēs nōbilēs

44 **Quīnque diēs continuōs...noctēs:** *for...*; acc. of duration of time

46 **confectus:** *wearied, exhausted;* PPP

ingentī...laetitiā: *with...*; abl. of manner

47 **omnium:** subjective gen. pl.

mortuus est: pf. dep. morior

Cuius virī: *of this man;* connective relative,

all modifying nom. neuter pl. vitia

sī comparentur...facile sit: *if...should be, it would be easy...*; fut. less vivid (sī pres. subj., pres. subj.); pres. subj. sum

48 **dictū:** *to say;* 'in saying' a supine (PPP + ū), abl. of respect

utrum...fuerit: *whether...*; ind. question, pf. subj. sum

bellō, pāce: *in...in...*; abl. of respect

27a. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

L. Cornēlius Sulla, quī bellō Iugurthīnō quaestor Mariī cōsulis 1
 fuit, usque ad quaestūram vītā lūxuriōsam ēgerat. Marius molestē
 tulisse trāditur, quod sibi gravissimum bellum gerentī quaestor
 voluptātī dēditus sorte obvēnisset. Eiusdem virtūs tamen, postquam
 in Āfricā vēnit, ēnituit. Bellō Cimbricō lēgātus cōsulis fuit et 5
 bonam operam ēdidit. Cōsul ipse deinde factus, pulsō in exilium
 Mariō, adversus Mithridātem profectus est. Mithridātēs enim,
 Ponticus rēx, vir bellō ācerimus, virtūte ēgrēgiā, odiō in Rōmānōs
 nōn inferior Hannibale fuit. Effēcerat igitur ut omnēs in Asiā cīvēs
 Rōmānī eādē diē atque hōrā interficerentur. 10

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, keen, 4
Cimbricus, -a, -um: of the Cimbri (Gauls)
Cornēlius, -ī m.: Cornelius, 3
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditum: put forth, give out, 5
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: make, form, 4
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
ēnitō, -ere, ēnitū: shine forth, gleam
exilium, -ī n.: exile, banishment
hōra, -ae f.: hour
inferior, -ius: lower, beneath
Iugurthinus, -a, -um: Jugurthine, of J. 1
lūxuriōsus, -a, -um: luxuriant, excessive

1 **bellō Iugurthīnō:** *in...*; abl. time when
 2 **ēgerat:** plpf. agō; agere vītā is an idiom
 that means 'to live life' or 'to spend life'
molestē: *with annoyance;* adverb
 3 **tulisse:** pf. inf. ferō, 'endure' or 'bear'
quod...obvēnisset: *because he had...*; plpf.
 subj., subj. of subordinate verb in ind. disc.
sibi...gerentī: *to him...*; i.e. Marius, dat.
 of compound verb obvēnisset modified by
 pres. pple gerō
quaestor: *the quaestor;* i.e. Sulla, subject
 4 **voluptātī:** dat. ind. obj. with PPP dēditus
sorte: *by lot, by chance*
Eiusdem: gen. sg. idem; i.e. of Sulla
 5 **Bellō Cimbricō:** *in...*; abl. of time when
fuit: *he was;* i.e. Sulla, pf. sum; a legate is a
 very high officer in the consul's staff

Mithridātēs, -is m.: Mithridates, 7
molestus, -a, -um: troublesome, annoying, 2
obveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: come to, 2
odium, -ī n.: hatred, loathing
opera, -ae f.: effort, exertion, work, 3
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6
Ponticus, -a, -um: of Pontus, 2
postquam: after, when, 6
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor (an official), 7
quaestūra, -ae f.: quaestorship, 2
sors, sortis f.: lot, casting of lots, 3
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7
usque: up to, until; all the way, 3

6 **cōsul ipse:** nom. pred after PPP faciō
pulsō...Mariō: abl. abs., PPP pellō
 7 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor
enim: *for...*; or 'indeed,' postpositive,
 translate first in the sentence
 8 **bellō:** *in...*; abl. of respect
ācerimus: superlative ācer
virtūte ēgrēgiā: *with...*; abl. of quality
 modifying vir
odiō: *in...*; abl respect with inferior
in Rōmānōs: *against...*
 9 **Hannibale:** *than...*; abl. of comparison
Effēcerat: *had brought it about that...*
ut...interficerentur: *that...*; a noun result
 clause following plpf. efficiō
 10 **eādē diē...hōrā:** *on...*; abl. time when

27b. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

Ac p̄mō Sulla illius praefectōs duōbus proeliīs in Graeciā 11
superāvit; deinde in Asiā Mithridātem ipsum fūdīt; oppressisset
quoque nisi in Italiam ad bellum cīvīle adversus factiōnem
populārem redīre properāns quālemcumque pācem facere
māluisset, Mithridātem tamen pecūniā multāvit; dē Asiā aliīsque 15
prōvinciīs quās occupāverat dēcedere paternīsque finibus
contentum esse coēgit.

Sulla propter mōtūs urbānōs cum victōre exercitū Rōmam
properāvit; eōs quī Mariō favēbant omnēs superāvit. Nihil autem
eā victoriā fuit crūdēlius. Sulla, urbem ingressus et dictātor 20

cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
contentus, -a, -um: content, satisfied
crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 3
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī: depart, withdraw, die, 3
factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6
favēō, -ēre, fāvī: favor, be propitious (dat) 2
finis, -is m./f.: end, border; territory, 3
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum: pour, shed, 4
Graecia, -ae f.: Greece, 2
ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum: step in, enter, 4
mālō, malle, maluī: prefer, 5
Mithridatēs, -is m.: Mithridates, 7
motus, -ūs m.: movement, disturbance

- 11 **p̄mō:** *at first*; abl. as adverb
illius: *of that one*; i.e. of Mithridates
duōbus proeliīs: abl. means or time when
12 **fūdīt:** *routed, overcame*; else 'poured'
oppressisset...nisi...māluisset: *he would have..., if he had not...;* past contrary-to-fact condition (sī plpf. subj., plpf. subj.)
oppressisset: supply Mithridates as obj.
13 **ad bellum cīvīle:** *for...;* expresses purpose
factiōnem populārem: i.e. the populares
14 **redire:** inf. redeō
properāns: nom. sg. pres. pple
quālemcumque pācem: *whatever peace*;
acc. obj. of *facere*; not a relative pronoun
15 **pecūniā:** i.e. with a fine; abl. of means
dē...prōvinciīs: *from...;* abl. separation
paternīs finibus: *with...;* abl. means with

multō (1): punish 1
nisi: if not, unless, 7
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 5
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: oppress, overwhelm, 5
paternus, -a, -um: of one's father, paternal
populāris, -e: of the people, popular, 4
praefectus, -i m.: commander, prefect
properō (1): hasten, 3
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7
quālicumque: of what sort whatsoever
urbānus, -a, -um: of a city, urban, 2

- predicate contentum; finēs often means 'territory' or 'borders'
17 **coēgit (Mithridātem):** *he compelled (Mithridates)...*; pf. cōgō; Sulla is subject, supply 'Mithridates' as the acc. obj.
18 **mōtūs:** *disturbances*; 4th decl. acc. pl.
victōre: *as victor*; in apposition to exercitū
Rōmam: place to which
19 **eōs quī:** *those who...*
Mariō: dat. ind. obj. of *favēbant*
omnēs: modifying *eōs*, note the emphatic position: 'one and all'
20 **eā victoriā:** *than...;* abl. of comparison, eā is a demonstrative adj.
crūdēlius: nom. pred. neut. comparative adj.
ingressus: pf. dep. *ingredior*
dictātor: nom. pred. following PPP creō

27c. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

creātus, vel in eōs quī sē sponte dēdiderant iussit animadvertī. 21
 Quattuor mīlia dēditōrum inermium cīvium in circō interficī iussit.
 Quis autem illōs potest ēnumerāre quōs in urbe passim quisquis
 voluit occīdit? Dēnique admonuit eum Fūfidius quīdam vīvere
 aliquōs dēbēre, ut essent quibus imperāret. Novō et inaudīto 25
 exemplō tabulam prōscriptiōnis prōposuit, quā nōmina eōrum quī
 occīdendī essent continēbantur; cumque omnium orta esset
 indignātiō, postrīdiē plūra etiam nōmina adiēcit. Ingēns caesōrum
 fuit multitūdō.

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: add, throw to, 2
admoneō, -ēre, admonuī: warn, advise
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 3
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī: notice; punish, 4
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum: kill, cut down, 4
circus, -ī m.: racetrack, circuit, 3
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: contain, 3
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, dēbitum: owe, ought, 3
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
dēnique: lastly, finally, 7
ēnumerō (1): count up, count out
exemplum, -ī n.: example, 3
Fūfidius, -ī m.: Fufidius
imperō (1): order, command, 4
inauditus, -a, -um: unheard

- 21 **in eōs quī:** *against those who...*
sponte: *willingly;* an abl. as adverb
iussit: pf. iubeō
animadvertī: *to be punished;* pass. inf.
 22 **quattuor...interficī:** *that...;* ind. disc.
 with pass. inf. interficō
dēditōrum...cīvium: partitive gen. pl.
 23 **quōs...occīdit:** *whom (one)...*; relative
 clause, illōs is the antecedent; pf. occīdō
quisquis voluit: *whoever...;* relative clause,
 the antecedent is the missing subject of
 occīdit; pf. volō
 24 **eum:** *him;* i.e. Sulla
quīdam: i.e. a certain man named Fūfidius
vīvere...dēbēre: *that...;* ind. disc., inf.
 debeō governs a complementary inf.
 25 **ut essent quibus imperāret:** *so that there*
might be (men) whom he could command; a
 purpose clause with impf. subj. sum, and a
 relative clause of purpose with impf. subj.;

indignātiō, -tīōnis f.: outrage, indignity, 4
inermis, -e: unarmed
mille, pl. mīlia: thousand, 6
occīdō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum: kill, cut down, 7
passim: here and there, far and wide
plūs, plūris: more; many, 4
postrīdiē: the day after, the next day
prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: set forth, 3
prōscriptiō, -ōnis n.: proscription
quattuor: four, 5
quisquis, quidquid: whoever, whatever
sponte: by one's own will, willingly
tabula, -ae f.: tablet, 2
vel: or, either...or, 2
vīvō, -ere, vixī, vīctum: live, 4

- quibus is an ind. obj. of imperārent
nōvō...exemplō: *as...;* 'for...' dat. of
 purpose; inaudītō, 'unheard (of)' describes
 something not experienced before
 26 **quā:** *on which (tablet)*
eōrum: *of those...;* elsewhere 'their'
quī occīdendī essent: *who had to ...;* 'were
 (going) to be...,' a past passive periphrastic
 (gerundive + sum) expressing necessity
 (equiv. to occīdendī erat); this relative
 clause of characteristic governs a subj.
 27 **cum...orta esset indignātiō:** *when...;* cum
 clause with plpf. dep. subj. orior
omnium indignātiō: *his indignation for*
everyone; omnium is an objective gen.
 28 **etiam:** *still, even;* modifying neut. plūra
caesōrum: *of those...;* gen. pl. PPP caedō

27d. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

Nec solum in eōs saevīvit quī armīs contrā sē dīmīcāverant, sed 30
etiam quiētōs cīvēs propter pecūniae magnitudinem prōscrīptōrum
numerō adīecit. Cīvis quīdam innoxius, cui fundus in agrō Albānō
erat, legēns prōscrīptōrum nōmina sē quoque vīdit adscrīptum.
“Vae,” inquit, “miserō mihi!” Mē fundus Albānus persequitur.”
Neque longē prōgressus ā quōdam quī eum āgnōverat interfectus 35
est.

Sulla, oppressīs inimīcōrum partibus, Fēlicem sē ēdictō
appellāvit; cumque eius uxor geminōs eōdem partū ēdidisset,
puerum Faustum puellamque Faustam nōminārī voluit. Sed paucīs

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: add, throw to, 2
agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum: recognize, 2
dīmīcō (1): fight, struggle, contend, 3
ēdictum, -ī n.: proclamation, edict, 2
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: put forth, give out, 5
faustus, -a, -um: favorable, 2
fēlix (1): happy, lucky, prosperous
fundus, -ī m.: farm, estate, 2
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, 3
inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6
innoxius, -a, -um: harmless, innocent
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7
longē: far, 4
magnitūdō, -tūdinis f.: size, greatness, 2

miser, misera, miserum: sad, gloomy, 2
nōminō (1): call by name, name, mention
numerus, -ī m.: number, multitude, 2
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: oppress,
overwhelm, 5
partus, -ūs m.: birth, bringing forth
persequor, -ī, -cūtus sum: follow, pursue, 2
progredior, -gredī, progressus sum: advance
prōscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī: proscribe, outlaw 1
puella, -ae f.: girl
quiētus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed, 4
saevīō, -īre, -īrī: rage, rave, be angry, 2
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scriptum: write, 6
Vae: woe (exclamation) 2

- 30 **nec solum...sed etiam:** *not only...but also*
in eōs: *against...*
armīs: abl. means
contrā sē: the antecedent of the reflexive
is the subject of the main verb: Sulla
(**in**) **quiētōs cīvēs:** (*against*)...; parallel to **in**
eōs above
prōscrīptōrum: *of those proscribed; PPP*
32 **numerō:** *to...*; dat. of compound verb
cui...erat: dat. of possession may be
translated three ways (1) ‘to whom there
was,’ (2) ‘whose...was’, or (3) ‘who had’
33 **legēns...nōmina:** pres. pple
sē...adscrīptum (esse): *that...*; ind. disc.
with pf. pass. inf. **adscrībō**
34 **Vae...miserō mihi:** *Woe to...*; dat. of
interest

- persequitur:** *pursues, chases*
35 **prōgressus:** pf. dep. pple, prōgredior, as
often is translated as ‘having Xed’
ā quōdam: *by a certain man;* abl. of agent
37 **oppressīs...partibus:** abl. abs.; the partēs
are ‘factions’
inimīcōrum: *rivals;* a substantive; political
rivals rather than foreign enemies of Rome
ēdictō: abl. means
38 **appellāvit:** governs a double acc. (acc.
obj. and acc. pred.)
eōdem partū: *by...*; abl. of means
39 **puerum...nōminārī:** pres. pass. inf.; i.e.
(x) to be called (y); acc. subj. and pred.;
Sulla wanted to call the children the masc.
and fem. form of the same name
voluit: pf. volō

27e. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

post annīs repente contrā omnium expectatiōnem dictatūram 40
 dēposuit. Dēmissīs lictōribus, diū in forō cum amīcīs dēambulāvit.
 Stupēbat populus eum prīvātum vidēns, cuius potestās modo tam
 metuenda fuerat. Quamquam iam prīvātus erat, nōn solum salūs,
 sed etiam dignitās manēbat—quī tot cīvēs occīderat. Ūnus
 adulescēns fuit quī audēret querī et Sullam redeuntem usque ad 45
 forēs domūs exsecrārī. Atque ille, cuius īram potentissimī virī
 maximaeque cīvitātēs nec effugere nec plācāre potuerant, ūnūs
 adulēscētis contumēliās aequō animō tulit, id tantum in līmine
 dīcēns: “Hic adulēscēns efficiet ut nēmō posthāc tāle imperium
 dēpōnat.” 50

aequō (1): equal, make level, 2
amīcus, -ī m.: friend, 4
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 5
contumēlia, -ae f.: insult, abuse, reproach
dēambulō (1): take a walk, walk off
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: drop, sink
dēponō, -ere, -posuī: put down, deposit, 5
dictatūra, -ae f.: dictatorship, 2
dignitās, -tātis f.: worth, merit, worthiness, 2
diū: a long time, long, 3
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: make, form, 4
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee away, escape, 2
exsecror, -āre, -ātus sum: curse utterly
expectatiō, -tiōnis f.: awaiting, expectation 1
foris, -is f.: door, entrance, 2
hīc: here
īra, īrae f.: anger, 3
lictōr, lictōris m.: lictor (bodyguard), 5
līmen, līminis n.: threshold, doorway

maneō, -ēre, mansī: stay, wait, wait for, 7
metuō, -ere, -uī: fear, dread, 3
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 3
nēmō, nūllūs, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā: no
 one, 6
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: kill, cut down, 7
plācō (1): appease, soothe, allay
posthāc: after this, hereafter
potens (1): powerful; capable
potestās, -tātis f.: power; rule, sovereignty, 4
prīvātus, -ī m.: private citizen, 6
queror, -ī, questus sum: complain, lament, 3
repente: suddenly, unexpectedly
salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 4
stupeō, -ēre, -uī: be astonished, astounded 1
tālis, -e: such, the sort, 2
tot: so many, 2
usque: up to, until; all the way, 3

40 **paucīs post annīs:** *a few years later;*
 ‘after by a few years’ abl. of degree of
 difference with the adverb ante
omnium: subjective gen.
 41 **dēmissīs lictōribus:** abl. abs.
 42 **prīvātum:** *as a private citizen*
vidēns: pres. pple
cuius: *whose;* gen. sg.
modo: *just now*
 43 **metuenda fuerat:** *had to be...;* ‘had
 been (going) to be feared’ pass. periphrastic
 (gerundive + sum) expressing necessity
nōn solum...sed etiam: *not only...but also*

45 **quī audēret...:** *who...;* relative clause
 of characteristic with impf. subj. audeō
querī, exsecrārī: dep. inf. queor, exsecror
redeuntem: pres. pple redeō
 46 **domūs:** *of...;* gen. sg. 4th decl. domus
cuius: gen. sg. quī, quae, quod
 47 **potuerant:** plpf. possum
ūnūs adulēscētis: subjective gen. sg.;
 ūnus is a pronomial adj., -ūs is the gen.
 48 **aequō animō:** *with a level head;* manner
tulit: pf. ferō, ‘endure’ or ‘bear’
id tantum: *this alone;* tantum is an adverb
 49 **ut...dēpōnat:** *that...;* noun result clause

27f. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

Sulla in vīllā voluptātibus dēditus reliquam vītam ēgit. Ibi 51
morbō correptus mortuus est, vir ingentis animī, cupidus
voluptātum, sed glōriae cupidior. Ante victōriam laudandus erat,
sed in eīs quae secūta sunt numquam satis reprehēnsus; urbem
enim et Italiam cīvīlis sanguinis flūminibus inundāvit. Nōn solum 55
in vīvōs saeviit, sed nē mortuīs quidem pepercit. Nam Gaiī Mariī,
cuius quaestor fuerat, ērutōs cinerēs in flūmen prōiēcit. Quā
crūdēlitate factōrum ēgregiōrum glōriam corrūpit.

cinis, cineris m.: ash
corripio, -ere, -ui, -reptum: snatch, seize
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum: ruin, spoil 4
crūdēlitas, -tātis f.: cruelty, crudeness, 3
cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 3
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, -ditum: give up, surrender, 7
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: put forth, give out, 5
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
ēruō, -ere, ēruī, ērutum: dig up, tear out
Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 3
glōria, -ae f.: glory, fame, 3
inundō (1): overflow, run over
laudō (1): praise, glorify, 5

- 51 **voluptātibus:** *to...*; dat. ind. obj.
dēditus: *having surrendered*; a PPP middle (reflexive) in sense
ēgit: pf. agō; *agere vītam* is a common idiom: ‘to live life’ or ‘to spend life’
52 **morbō:** abl. of means
mortuus est: pf. dep. morior
ingentis animī: *of...*; gen. of description
53 **voluptātum:** *for...*; objective gen. pl.
glōriae: *for...*; objective gen. with cupidior
cupidior: comparative adj.
laudantus erat: *had to be...*; ‘was going to be praised;’ past passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum)
54 **in eīs:** *among those (victories)*
secūta sunt: pf. dep. sequor

morbus, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 3
numquam: never, 3
parcō, -ere, pepercī: spare, refrain (dat.), 3
proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: project forth 2
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor (an official), 7
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, left, 6
reprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum: blame, rebuke, 3
saeviō, -īre, -iī: rage, rave, be angry, 2
sanguis, sanguinis m.: blood, 2
satis: enough, 5
vīlla, -ae f.: villa, cottage, 4
vīvus, -a, -um: alive, living, 3

- 54 **reprehēnsus (erat):** plpf. pass., add ‘erat’
cīvīlis sanguinis: gen. sg.; i.e. civil wars
55 **nōn solum...sed:** *not only...but (also)*
56 **in vīvōs:** *against...*
nē...quidem: *not even...*; this pair emphasizes the intervening word
mortuīs: *the dead*; a substantive
Gaiī Mariī: gen. poss. with cinerēs
57 **cuius:** gen. sg. relative quī, quae, quod
ērutōs: PPP ēruō
prōiēcit: Sulla is still subject; pf. proiciō
Quā crūdēlitate: *by this...*; connective relative: translate as demonstrative; abl. of means
58 **factōrum:** *deeds*; ‘things done’ gen. pl.; a substantive formed from the PPP of faciō

28a. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Gnaeus Pompeius bellō cīvīlī annōs vīgintī trēs nātus partēs 1
Sullae secūtus est brevīque tempore sē ducem perītum praebuit.
Imprīmīs mīlitibus cārus erat, quod nūllum labōrem vītābat atque
cum omnibus saltū, cursū, lūctandō certābat. Coāctīs reliquīs eius
exercitūs cui pater praefuerat ad Sullam ex Asiā advenientem 5
contendit, et in itinere trēs hostium exercitūs aut superāvit aut sibi
adiūnxit. Sulla imperātōrem tum salūtāvit semperque maximō
honōre habuit.

Multīs post annīs imperium extraōrdinārium Pompeiō dēlātum
est, ut opprimeret praedōnēs, quī omnia maria īnfesta reddēbant et 10

adiungō, -ere, adiūnxī: join to, connect
adveniō, -ire, -vēnī: come to, approach, 4
brevīs, -e: short, brief, 5
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 4
certō (1): contend, strive, complete, 2
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
contendō, -ere, -ī: strive; hasten; contend, 3
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: offer, give over 6
extraōrdinārius, -a, -um: uncommon
Gnaeus, -ī m.: Gnaeus, 2
imprīmīs: in particular, especially, 3
īnfestus, -a, -um: hostile, unsafe, 4
labor, -is m.: labor, toil, 3
lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum: wrestle, struggle

- 1 **bellō cīvīlī:** *in...*; abl. of time when; cīvīlī
is 3rd decl. i-stem adj. in the abl.
annōs vīgintī (et) trēs: *...(ago)*; acc. of
duration
nātus: PPP nascor
partēs Sullae: *factions of Sulla*
2 **secūtus est:** pf. dep. sequor
brevī tempore: *in...*; abl. time when
praebuit: pf. praebēō, governs a double
acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)
3 **imprīmīs:** elsewhere in pīmīs
mīlitibus: *to...*; dat. of interest
quod...: *because...*; causal quod clause
4 **saltū, cursū:** *in...in...*; abl. of respect
lūctandō: *in...*; abl. of respect, a gerund (-
ing)
coāctīs reliquīs: abl. abs., PPP cōgō
eius: *his*; gen. sg. i.e. Pompeius

mare, maris n.: sea, 6
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: oppress,
overwhelm, 5
perītus, -a, -um: experienced in (gen.), 2
praebēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: present, put forth, 4
praedo, -ōnis m.: pirate, plunderer, 5
praesum, -esse, -fui: be over, preside over, 2
reddō -ere -didī -ditum: give back, render, 5
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, left (over), 6
saltus, -ūs m.: leap, jump, spring, 2
salūtō (1): greet, 2
semper: always, ever, forever, 3
vīgintī: twenty, 6
vītō (1): avoid, evade, shun, 3

- exercitūs:** gen. sg. modifying reliquīs
5 **cui:** *over...*; relative, dat. of compound
verb; plpf. praesum
advenientem: pres. pple modifying Sullam
6 **trēs hostium exercitūs:** trēs modifies acc.
pl. exercitūs; hostium is gen. pl.
aut...aut: *either...or*
sibi: *to...*; dat. of compound verb
9 **multīs post annīs:** *many years later*; 'later
by many years,' abl. of degree of difference
Pompeiō: *to Pompey*; dat. ind. obj.
dēlātum est: pf. pass.
10 **ut...praedōnēs:** (*namely*) *that...*; ind.
command
reddēbant: *were rendering, were making*;
governs a double acc. (acc. obj. and acc.
pred.)

28b. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

quāsdam etiam Italiae urbēs dīripuerant. Hoc bellum tantā 11
celeritāte cōnfēcit ut intrā quadrāgintā diēs omnēs praedōnēs aut
interficerentur aut sē dēderent.

Statim in Asiam magnō exercitū missus est contrā Mithridātem,
Ponticum rēgem, quōcum Rōmānī aliquot annōs iam contendēbant. 15
Rēx diū castrīs sē continuit neque pugandī facultātem dedit. Cum
autem frūmentum dēficere coepisset, fugere cōnātus est. At
Pompeius secūtus hostem tertiā nocte in saltū quōdam intercēpit
lūnāque adiuvante fūdīt. Nam cum Rōmānī lūnam ā tergō
habērent, hostēs longīs umbrīs corporum Rōmānōrum dēceptī in 20
umbrās tēla coniecērunt. Victus Mithridātēs in Pontum profūgit.

adiuvō, -āre, -iuvī, -iutum: help, assist, 4
aliquot: several, 5
celeritās, celeritātis f.: speed, 2
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw, hurl, 5
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7
contendō, -ere, -ī: strive; hasten; contend, 3
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: contain, 3
decipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: catch, deceive 1
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: fail, give out, 3
dīripiō, -ere, -uī, reptum: snatch, ransack, 3
diū: a long time, long, 3
facultās, -tātis f.: opportunity, skill, ability
frūmentum, -ī n.: grain, 3
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum: pour, shed, 4
hīc: here
intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: catch

- 11 **tantā celeritāte:** *with...*; abl. of manner
12 **ut...dēderent:** *that...*; result clause with
impf. subj.
aut...aut: *either...or*
14 **magnō exercitū:** *with...*; abl. of
accompaniment
15 **quōcum:** cum quō...
aliquot annōs: *for...*; acc. of duration of
time; aliquot is an indeclinable adj.
16 **castrīs:** *in...*; abl. means
pugandī: *for...*; gen. sg., a gerund (-ing)
dedit: pf. dō
17 **cum coepisset:** *when...*; plpf. subj. but
simple past in sense

intrā: within, inside (acc.), 2
longus -a, -um: long, 2
lūna, -ae f.: moon, 3
Mithridātēs, -is m.: Mithridates, 7
Mithridāticus, -a, -um: Mithridatic, 2
Ponticus, -a, -um: of Pontus, 2
pontus, -ī m.: sea, 2
praedo, -ōnis m.: pirate, plunderer, 5
pugnō (1): fight, 3
quadrāgintā: forty, 5
saltus, -ūs m.: leap, jump, spring, 2
statim: immediately, on the spot, at once, 5
tēlum, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6
tergum, -ī n.: back, hide, rear
tertius, -a, -um: third, 2
umbra, -ae f.: shadow, shade, 2

- cōnātus est:** pf. dep.
At: *but;* a strong adversative
18 **secūtus:** pf. dep. pple, as often, translate
the pple as ‘having Xed’
tertiā nocte: abl. of time when
19 **lūnā adiuvante:** abl. abs. with pres. pple
fūdīt: *routed, overcame;* else ‘poured’
ā tergō: *from the rear;* i.e. on their backs,
the moon was behind them
20 **longīs umbrīs:** abl. of means
dēceptī: PPP dēcipiō modifying hostēs
in: *against...; toward...*
21 **victus:** PPP vincō

28c. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Posteā dēsperātīs fortūnīs venēnō vītam fīnīre frūstrā cōnātus est; 22
adversus enim venēna multīs anteā medicāmentīs corpus
firmāverat. Impetrāvit inde ā mīlite Gallō ut sē gladiō interficeret.

Cum Tigrānēs, rēx Armeniae, celeriter sē dēdisset atque ad 25
genua victōris prōcubisset, Pompeius eum benignīs verbīs
allocūtus est et diadēma, quod abiēcerat, capitī repōnere iussit.
Inde Rōmānōrum prīmus Iūdaeōs vīcit Hierosolymaque, caput
gentis, cēpit sāctissimamque partem templī iūre victōris ingressus
est. 30

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw away
alloquor, loquī, -ūtus sum: speak, address, 3
Armenia, -ae f.: Armenia, 2
benignus, -a, -um: kind, kindly, 3
celeriter: swiftly, quickly, 5
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7
dēsperō (1): despair, feel no hope, 3
diadēma, -ātis n.: diadem, headress, crown, 3
finiō, -ire, -ir: limit, end, enclose, 2
firmō (1): make strong, strengthen, support, 3
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
frūstrā: in vain, for nothing, 4
genu, -ūs n.: knee

- 22 **dēsperātīs fortūnīs:** abl. abs.
venēnō: abl. means
cōnātus est: pf. dep.
23 **venēna:** acc. obj. of preposition *adversus*
multīs medicāmentīs: means
24 **ā mīlite Gallō:** *from...*; abl. of source
ut...interficeret: *that...*; noun result clause
25 **cum...dēdisset...prōcubisset:** *when...*;
plpf. subj.
sē dēdisset: i.e. surrendered to Pompey
26 **genua:** neuter pl. 4th decl. noun
benignīs verbīs: abl. means
27 **allocūtus est:** pf. dep. *alloquor*
quod: *which...*; the antecedent is neuter

gladius, -ī m.: sword, 6
Hierosolyma, -ōrum n.: Jerusalem
impetrō (1): attain (by asking), accomplish, 3
ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum: step in, enter, 4
Iūdaeus, -a, -um: Judaeans
medicāmentum, -ī n.: drug, remedy
prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui: fall forward
repōnō, -ere, -posui: place or put back, 2
sanctus, -a, -um: sacred, holy, 2
templum, -ī n.: temple, 5
Tigrānēs, -is m.: Tigranes
venēnum, -ī n.: poison, 3
victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 2

- sg. diadēma
capitī: *back on...*; dat. of compound; use
the prefix (re-) as a preposition and the dat.
as the object
iussit: pf. *iubeō*
28 **Rōmānōrum:** among...; partitive gen.
prīmus: *for the first time*; i.e. he was the
first to...
vīcit: pf. *vincō*
caput: i.e. capitol city
Hierosolyma: acc. pl.; the name refers to a
single city but is plural in form
29 **iūre:** *by the right...*
ingressus est: pf. dep. *ingredior*

28d. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Regressus in Italiam triumphum ex Asiā ēgit, cum antea ex Africā 31
et ex Hispaniā triumphāvisset. Triumphus illūstrior fuit grātorque
populō, quod Pompeius nōn armātus, sicut Sulla, ad Rōmam
subigendam, sed dīmissō exercitū redisset.

Postea, ortā inter Pompeium et Caesarem gravī dissēsiōne, 35
quod hic superiōrem, ille parem ferre nōn poterat, bellum cīvile
exārsit. Caesar īnfestō exercitū in Italiam vēnit. Pompeius, relicta
urbe ac deinde Italiā ipsā, Thessaliam petīvit et cum eō cōsulēs
senātūsque magna pars; quem īnsecūtus Caesar apud Pharsālum
aciē fūdīt. Victus Pompeius ad Ptolemaeum, Aegyptī rēgem, cui 40

aciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6
Aegyptus, -ī m.: Egypt, 2
ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum: be on fire, burn
armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5
dīmittō, -ere, -misi, -sum: dismiss, let go 5
dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 3
exardeō, -ēre, exārsi: burn, be on fire
exerceō, -ēre, -ui, exercitum: exercise, 3
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum: pour, shed, 4
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing, grateful, 4
hic: here
illūstris, -e: distinguished, illustrious, 2

- 31 **Regressus:** pf. dep. pple; as often, this pple is translated actively: ‘having Xed’
ēgit: *conducted*; pf. agō
32 **cum...triumphāvisset:** *when...*; plpf. subj.
illūstrior, grātor: comparative adj.; grātus has two meanings: (1) ‘grateful’ or (2) ‘pleasing’
33 **populō:** *to...*; dat. of reference
quod...redisset: *because...*; ‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view; plpf. subj. redeō
ad Rōmam subigendam: *for...*; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.; subigō (sub + agō)
34 **dīmissō exercitū:** abl. abs.
35 **postea:** i.e. in 49 BCE
ortā...dissēsiōne: abl. abs., ortā is a pf. dep. pple translated actively: ‘having Xed’
gravī: abl. sg. 3rd decl. i-stem adj.
36 **quod hic superiōrem (ferre nōn**

īnfestus, -a, -um: hostile, unsafe, 4
īnsequor, -quī, -cūtus sum: follow, ensue, 3
Pharsālus, -ī m.: Pharsalus (Greek town)
Ptolemaeus, -ī m.: Ptolemy, 2
regredior, -ī, -gressus sum: step back, 3
sicut: just as, as, so as, 2
subigō, -ere, -ēgī: drive up, conquer, subdue 1
superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 3
Thessalia, -ae f.: Thessaly (norther Greece) 1
triumphō (1): celebrate a triumph, 4
Triumphus, -ī m.: triumph (parade), 4

- poterat et) ille parem ferre nōn poterat:** *because this one...(and) that one...*; hic, ‘this one’ refers to the closest term, Caesar, and ille, ‘that one,’ refers to the farther term, Pompey; ferre is inf. ferō, ‘endure;’ supply omitted words (ferre nōn poterat et) to create parallel clauses
superiōrem, parem: *a superior...an equal*; treat these adjectives as substantives
37 **exārsit:** *burst into flames*; inceptive pf.
īnfestō exercitū: *with...*; accompaniment
relicta urbe...ipsā: abl. abs.
38 **et...-que:** *both...and*
cum eō: i.e. Pompey
39 **senātūs:** gen. sg. 4th decl.
quem: *this one*; a connective relative
īnsecūtus: pf. dep. pple īnsequor
apud: *at...*; a town in northern Greece
40 **aciē:** means
fūdīt: *routed, overcame*; ‘poured’
victus: PPP vincō
cui: dat. sg. quī, quae, quod

28e. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

tūtor ā senātū datus erat, profūgit; ille Pompeium interficī iussit. 41
Ita Pompeius sub oculīs uxōris et līberōrum interfectus est, caput
praecīsum, truncus in Nīlum coniectus. Deinde caput ad Caesarem
dēlātum est, quī eō visō lacrimās nōn continuit.

Is fuit Pompeiī vītae exitus post trēs cōsulātūs et totidem 45
triumphōs.

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum: throw, hurl, 5
cōsulātus, -ūs m.: consulship 6
contineō, -ēre, -nuī, -tentum: contain, 3
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry away/off, 6
exitus, -ī m.: end, death; departure, 3
lacrima, -ae f.: tear, 2
līberī, -ōrum m.: children, 3

Nīlus, -ī m.: Nile river
oculus, -ī m.: eye
praecīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: cut off, 3
totidem: so many as, as many, 2
Triumphus, -ī m.: Triumph, 4
truncus, -ī m.: trunk, stem
tūtor, -ōris m.: guardian; defender, 2

Ille: i.e. Ptolemy
Pompeium interficī: *that...*; ind. dis. with
pass. inf. interficīō
iussit: pf. iubeō
42 **sub:** *before...*
43 **praecīsum (est):** 3s pf. pass., add 'est'

caput is neuter sg. subject
truncus: i.e. the rest of his body
coniectus (est): 3s pf. pass., add 'est'
44 **eō visō:** abl. abs., eō is a demonstrative
pronoun, 'this,'s referring to the caput
45 **Is:** *this;* subject

29a. Gaius Julius Caesar

C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā nātus, agēns 1
annum sextum et decimum, patrem amīsīt. Ā puerō vidētur
populārem factiōnem in rē pūblicā secūtus esse, eō magis quod
Marius Iūliam, Caesaris amitam, in mātirimōnium dūxisset. Ipse
Cornēliam dūxit uxōrem, filiam Cinnae, quī Sullae inimīcissimus 5
erat. Cum Sulla victor Caesarem, sicut multōs aliōs, iussisset
uxōrem repudiāre, ille recūsāvit. Bonīs deinde spoliātus, cum
etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste, nocte urbe ēlapsus est.
Quamquam tum quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās
noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur, et dēnique ā Sullae libertō 10

amita, -ae f.: father's sister, aunt
amittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6
C.: Gaius, 5

Cinna, -ae m.: Cinna, 2

cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6

commūtō (1): change, exchange, 2

Cornēlia, -ae f.: Cornelia, 3

decimus, -a, -um: tenth, 2

dēnique: lastly, finally, 7

ēlābor, -lābī, -lapsus sum: slip/slide away, 2

factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6

familia, -ae f.: family, household, 2

inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6

Iūlia, -ae f.: Julia, 2

Iūlius, -ī m.: Julius, 4

labōrō (1): work, toil, labor, strive

latebra, -ae f.: hiding-place, lair

libertus, -ī m.: freedman (freed slave), 2

magis: more, 7

mātirimōnium, -īī n.: marriage, 7

morbus, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 3

mutō (1): change, alter, 3

necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6

populāris, -e: of the people, popular, 4

prope: nearly almost; near, 5

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum: seek, ask, inquire, 6

quārtāna, -ae f.: a fever, quartan fever

recūsō (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5

repudiō (1): reject, repudiate

sextus, -a, -um: sixth, 2

sicut: just as, as, so as, 2

singulus, -a, -um: one by one, separate, 2

spoliō (1): despoil, plunder, 5

vestis, -is f.: clothing, 3

1 **nōbilissimā...familiā:** *from...*; abl. source

nātus: PPP nascor

agēns: pres. pple; agō 'spend' or 'live'

2 **sextum et decimum:** single ordinal number

amīsīt: pf. amittō

Ā puerō: *from boyhood*

vidētur: the passive videor is often translated as the linking verb 'seem'

3 **secūtus esse:** pf. dep. inf. sequor

eō magis: *all the more*; a common phrase:

eō is abl. of degree of difference 'by this (much)'

4 **ipse:** *he himself*; intensive, i.e. Caesar

5 **dūxit:** i.e. in mātirimōnium

Sullae: dat. of special adj.

6 **cum...iussisset:** *when...*; cum clause with

plpf. subj. iubeō

victor: *as victor*; nom. apposition

7 **bonīs:** *from...*; abl. of separation; neuter

pl. bona is a substantive that means 'goods' 'property,' or 'possessions'

spoliātus: modifying Caesar, the subject

cum...quaererētur: impf. pass. subj.

ad necem: *for...*; expressing purpose

8 **mūtātā veste:** abl. abs.

nocte: *at...*; abl. time when

urbe: *from...*; abl. separation

9 **morbō:** abl. means with gen. quārtānae

labōrābat: *he struggled...*

10 **ā...libertō:** *by...*; abl. of agent

29b. Gaius Julius Caesar

comprehēnsus est. Eī vix, datā pecūniā, persuāsit ut sē dīmitteret. 11
Postrēmō per propinquōs et affīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit. Satis
tamen cōnstat Sullam monuisse eōs quī adulēscētī veniam
petēbant eum aliquandō nōbīlium partibus exitiō futūrum esse; nam
Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse. 15

Stīpendia p̄ma in Asiā fēcit, ubi in expugnātiōne Mytilēnārum
corōnā cīvīcā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit,
ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tum clārissimō dīcendī magistrō,
operam daret. Hūc dum trānsit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque
apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita 20

affinis, -e: neighboring; related
aliquandō: sometimes, at some time, 3
Apollōnius, -ī m.: Apollonius
cīvīcus, -a, -um: civic, civil, of a citizen
comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum: grasp, seize, 5
constō, -stāre, -stīti: stand firm; is agreed, 5
corōna, -ae f.: crown, garland
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -sum: dismiss, let go 5
dōnō (1): give, bestow, 5
exitium, -ī n.: (source of) destruction, 2
expugnātiō, -ōnis f.: taking by assault
hūc: to this place, hither, here 1
impetrō (1): attain, accomplish, 3
insum, -esse, -fui: be in, 2
magister, -ī m.: Master; helmsman, teacher, 6
maneō, -ēre, mansī: stay, wait, wait for, 7

Molo, Molōnis m.: Molo, 2
moneō, -ēre, -uī, monitum: warn, 4
Mytilēnae, -ārum f.: Mytilene (town)
opera, -ae f.: effort, exertion, work, 3
ōtium, -ī n.: leisure, peace
postrēmō: at last, finally, last of all, 3
praedo, -ōnis m.: pirate, plunderer, 5
prope: nearly almost; near, 5
propinquus, -a, -um: near, neighboring
quadrāgintā: forty, 5
Rhodos, -ī f.: Rhodes (island), 2
satis: enough, 5
sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī: go away, withdraw, 2
spatium, -ī n.: space; span of time
stīpendium, -ī n.: pay; military service, 3
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4

11 **Eī:** *him*; i.e. the freedman; dat. ind. obj. of persuāsit; Caesar is the subject
datā pecūniā: abl. abs.
ut...dīmitteret: *that...*; ind. command
12 **satis:** *sufficiently*; adv.
13 **cōnstat:** *it is agreed*; impersonal verb
Sullam monuisse: *that...*; ind. disc., pf. inf. moneō governing an acc. obj. and ind. disc.
eōs quī: *those who...*
adulēscētī: *for...*; dat. interest; i.e. Caesar
14 **eum...futūrum esse:** *that...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf. sum governed by monuisse
nōbīlium: gen. pl. modifying partibus
14 **partibus exitiō:** *as a source of destruction for the factions*; or with the inf. of sum: 'serve as a source of...;' double dative (dat. of purpose and dat. of interest)

nam...inesse: second ind. disc. governed by monuisse
15 **Caesarī:** *in...*; dat. of compound verb
Mariōs: *Mariuses*; i.e. many with the same character as Marius
16 **fēcit:** (*Caesar*) *completed...*
17 **corōnā cīvīcā:** *with...*; dōnō, 'bestow,' can govern an acc. and dat. or an abl. of means: 'bestow with...'
Mortuō Sullā: abl. abs., subj. and pred. supply the pple 'being;' mortuus, 'dead,' is an adj. from the PPP of morior
statuit: *he decided*
18 **ut...daret:** *so that...*; purpose, impf. dō
dīcendī: gen. sg. of the gerund (-ing)
20 **apud eōs:** *among them*
quadrāgintā diēs: *for...*; acc. of duration

29c. Gaius Julius Caesar

sē gessit ut praedōnibus pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset. 21
Redēptus inde ab amīcīs classem contrāxit captōsque praedōnēs
cruce affēcit, quod supplicium saepe inter iocum minātus erat.

Quaestōrī ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Aedilis praeter comitium ac
forum etiam Capitōlium ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem 25
lūdōsque apparātissimōs et cum collēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātīm
ēdidit. Hīs rēbus patrimonium effūdīt tantumque aes aliēnum
cōnflāvit ut ipse dīceret sibi opus esse mīliēns sēstertium, ut
habēret nihil.

aedilis, -is m.: aedile (city manager), 3
aes, aeris n.: bronze, 2
afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: affect, afflict, 2
aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5
amicus, -ī m.: friend, 4
apparātus, -a, -um: prepared; equipped
Bibulus, -a, -um: Bibulus, 4
Capitōlium, -ī n.: Capitolium, 5
classis, -is f.: fleet, 4
collēga, -ae m.: colleague, partner, 5
comitium, -ī n.: meeting, assembly, 4
cōnflō (1): blow up; kindle, arouse
contrahō, -ere, -trāxī: draw together, 2
cruce, crucis f.: cross, frame for torture
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: put forth, give out, 5
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour out, shed, 3
hīc: here
lūdus, -ī m.: game, sport; school, 6
M.: Marcus, 5

mīliēns: a thousand times
minor, -āre, -ātus sum: threaten, menace
obveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum: come to, 2
ōrnō (1): adorn, furnish, 2
patrimonium, -ī n.: inheritance, patrimony
porticus, -ī m.: portico, colonnade
praedo, -ōnis m.: pirate, plunderer, 5
praeter: in addition to, besides; except (acc) 2
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor (an official), 7
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum: buy/take back, 6
saepe: often, 3
sēparātīm: separately
sēstertius, ī (gen. pl. iūm): sesterce (coin)
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, supplication, 5
terror, terrōris m.: terror, fright, 4
ulterior, -ius: farther
vēnatio, -ōnis f.: hunting, the chase
veneratio, -tiōnis f.: reverence, veneration

- 21 **sē gessit:** *behaved;* ‘carried himself’
ut...esset: *that...;* result clause, impf. subj.
sum
praedōnibus...venerātiōnīque: *equally as
a terror and source of veneration for the
pirates;* or with *esset:* ‘served as a
terror...’ a double dative (dat. of interest +
two instances of dat. of purpose)
22 **redēptus:** PPP, Caesar is subject
23 **cruce affēcit:** *he crucified*
quod supplicium: *which punishment...;*
relative adj.
minātus erat: plpf. dep. minor
24 **Quaestōrī...obvēnit:** *Farther Spain came
to (Caesar) as quaestor;* dat. compound

- 24 **Aedilis:** *Caesar, as aedile,...*; subject
praeter...forum: *in addition to...*
25 **porticibus:** abl. means
26 **et...et...:** *both...and...*
27 **Hīs rēbus:** *because of...;* abl. of cause
aes aliēnum: *debt;* ‘another’s bronze’
28 **ut...dīceret:** *that...;* result clause, impf.
subj. dīcō
ipse: *he himself*
opus esse...: *that there is a need...;* ind.
disc.; *opus est, ‘there is a need...’* is an
idiom that governs a dat. of interest (for...)
and either an abl. or nom. of the thing
needed
ut...nihil: *so that...;* result clause

29d. Gaius Julius Caesar

Posteā societātem cum Gnaeō Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō iūnxit, nē 30
 quid agerētur in rē publicā, quod displiceret ūllī ex tribus. Cōsul
 deinde creātus cum M. Bibulō p̄mus omnium cōsulūm īnstituit
 ut diurna ācta et senātūs et populī perscrīberentur atque ēderentur.
 Aliquot lēgēs prō Pompeiō et Crassō sociīs pertulit, praecipuēque
 effēcit ut ipse prōvinciam Galliam obtinēret. Bibulus, cum frūstrā 35
 lēgibus obstitisset, per reliquum annī tempus domī abdītus, Cūriā
 abstinuit. Nōnnullī igitur, cum tabulās signārent, per iocum
 addidērunt nōn Caesare et Bibulō, sed Iūliō et Caesare cōsulibus.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -dītum: hide, put away, 2
abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: keep away
addō, -ere, -didī, -dītum: bring to, add, 7
aliquot: several, 5
Bibulus, -a, -um: Bibulus, 4
Crassus, -ī m.: Crassus, 3
Cūria, -ae f.: senate house, Curia, 8
displiceō, -ere, -uī: displease, dissatisfy
diurnus, -a, -um: by day, during the day
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -dītum: put forth, give out, 5
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: make, form, 4
frūstrā: in vain, for nothing, 4
Gallia, -ae f.: Gaul, 3
Gnaeus, -ī m.: Gnaeus, 2
iocus, -ī m.: joke, 2
Iūlius, -ī m.: Julius, 4
iungō, -ere, iunxī, -iunctum: join, 2

legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7
M.: Marcus, 5
Marcus, -ī m.: Marcus, 4
nōnnullus, -a, -um: some, several, 2
obstō, -āre, -stītī: stand in the way, oppose
 (dat)
obtimeō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold, maintain, 2
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry, endure, 4
perscribō, -ere, -scripsī: write in detail
praecipuē: especially, 2
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7
reliquus, -a, -um: remaining, left, 6
signō (1): mark out, designate
societās, -tātis f.: association, alliance, 5
socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7
tabula, -ae f.: tablet, 2
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 4

30 **nē quid agerētur.:** *so that not anything...*;
 neg. purpose; quis, quid is indefinite
 before sī, nisi, num, and nē
 31 **quod:** *which...*; the antecedent is quid
ūllī: *anyone*; dat. sg. of reference, ūllus is
 a pronomial with -ius in gen. and -ī in dat.
Cōsul: nom. pred. governed by PPP creō
tribus: abl. pl. trēs; i.e. Pompey, Crassus
 and Caesar, members of the 1st triumvirate
 32 **omnium cōsulūm:** partitive gen. pl.
 33 **ut...ēderentur:** *that...*; noun result clause
 impf. pass. subj. ēdō, ēdere
diurna ācta: *daily actions*; nom. neut. pl.
et...et...: *both...and...*; both gen. sg.
 34 **prō:** *on behalf of*
sociīs: in apposition to Pompeiō, Crassō
pertulit: *carried through*; i.e. passed
effēcit: *brought it about*

35 **ut...obtinēret:** *that...*; noun result clause
 following effēcit
cum...obstitisset: cum clause, plpf. subj.
 obstō
 36 **lēgibus:** dat. of compound verb
domī: *at home*; locative, place where
Cūria: *from...*; abl. of separation
 38 **Caesar et Bibulō (cōsulibus):** *in the
 consulship of Caesar and Bibulus*; ‘Caesar
 and Bibulus (being) consuls;’ abl. abs., add
 the pple ‘being;’ the Romans dated each
 year by the two consuls
Iūliō et Caesare cōsulibus: see above for
 translation; the joke here is that Iūlius and
 Caesar are not two different people but one
 in the same person: Gaius Julius Caesar,
 who seemingly monopolized the consulship
 and left Bibulus to play a minor role

29e. Gaius Julius Caesar

Caesar, cōsulātū perāctō, novem annīs Galliam in potestātem populī Rōmānī redēgit. Germānōs quoque aggressus est atque 40
p̄rimus imperātōrum Rōmānōrum in Britanniam trānsiit. Ipse
commentāriōs rērum gestārum cōnfēcit, quibus aliōs ūtī in
scrībendā historiā voluit. Sed, ut ait Cicero, “Sānōs quidem
hominēs ā scrībendō dēterruit; nihil est enim in historiā pūrā et
illūstrī brevitate commentāriōrum dulcius.” 45

Cum intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus esset, et mortua
Iulia, Caesaris fīlia, quae nūpta Pompeiō generī socerīque
concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Iam p̄ridem Pompeiō

aemulātiō, -tīōnis f.: rivalry, jealousy, envy
aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum: go to, attack, 3
āiō: say, assert
brevitās, -tātis f.: shortness, brevity
Britannia, -ae f.: Britain
commentārius, -ī m.: commentary, 2
cōsulātus, -ūs m.: consulship 6
Crassus, ī m.: Crassus, 3
dētierreō, -ēre, -uī: frighten off, prevent, 3
dulcis, -e: sweet; pleasant, free
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī: burst, break out, 2
Gallia, -ae f.: Gaul, 3
gener, generī m.: son-in-law
Germānī, -ōrum m.: Germans
historia, -ae f.: narrative, story, account, 2
homō, -inis m./f.: man, mortal, human, 4

illūstris, -e: distinguished, illustrious, 2
intereā: meanwhile, meantime
Iūlia, -ae f.: Julia, 2
novem: nine, 2
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, -ptum: veil 1
Parthī, -ōrum m.: Parthians, 2
peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum: drive through 1
potestās, -tātis f.: power; rule, sovereignty, 4
p̄ridem: long before, long ago
pūrus, -a, -um: clean, pure, free from dirt, 1
redigō -ere -ēgī -āctum: drive back, 3
sanus, -a, -um: sound, whole, healthy
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scriptum: write, 6
socer, socerī m.: father-in-law
statim: immediately, on the spot, at once, 5
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum: use, employ, enjoy, 5

- 39 **cōsulātū perāctō:** abl. abs.
novem annīs: *within...*; abl. time within
40 **aggressus est:** pf. dep. aggredior
41 **trānsiit:** pf. trānseō
imperātōrum Rōmānōrum: *of Roman commanders*
ipse: *he himself*; intensive
42 **rērum gestārum:** *of things done*; ‘things having been carried out,’ PPP gerō
quibus: *which...*; abl. object of inf. ūtor
ūtī: pres dep. inf. ūtor
in scrībendā historiā: Perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the gerundive + noun as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
43 **ū:** *as...*; clause of comparison
44 **ā scrībendō:** *from...*; abl. of separation
abl. sg. of a gerund (-ing)
enim: *for...*; or ‘indeed,’ postpositive:

- translate first in the sentence
pūrā et illūstrī brevitate: *than...*; abl. of comparison
45 **commentāriōrum:** *of the commentaries*;
Caesar’s work is called the *Commentariī*
dulcius: nom. pred. neut. comparative adj.
46 **Cum...interfectus esset:** *when...*; cum clause with plpf. pass. subj.
apud: *among...*
mortua (esset): *had died*; dep. morior
47 **nūpta:** PPP nūbō
Pompeiō: *for Pompey*; dat. of interest with nūpta; i.e. married to Pompey
generī socerīque: *for...*; dat. interest
Iam p̄ridem...erant: *had long before now been*; translate as plpf. progressive

29f. Gaius Julius Caesar

suspectae Caesaris opēs erant, et Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās
 gravis. Dēnique Caesar, ut sē tuērētur, postulāvit ut ex lēge ante 50
 lātā sibi absentī alterum cōsulātum petere liceret. Hoc inimicī,
 Pompeiō probante, negāvērunt atque iussērunt Caesarem ante
 certam diem exercitum prōvinciamque trādere.

Iniūriā incēnsus, ad Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae finis
 erat, cum exercitū prōcessit. Ibi paulum morātus, ut fāma fert, 55
 “Etiam nunc,” inquit, “regredi possimus; quod sī hoc flūmen
 trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt.” Postrēmō exclāmāvit:
 “Iacta est ālea.” Tum, exercitū flūmen trāductō bellōque cīvīli

absum, -esse, āfuī: be away, be absent, 5
ālea, -ae f.: die, one of 2 dice; game of dice
alter, -a, -erum: other, second, 7
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6
cōsulātus, -ūs m.: consulship 6
dēnique: lastly, finally, 7
dignitās, -tātis f.: worth, merit, worthiness, 2
exclāmō (1): shout out, shout, 2
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, exercitum: exercise, 3
fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7
finis, -is m./f.: end, border; territory, 3
hīc: here
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum: throw, cast, 2
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 7
inimicus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 5
licet, -ēre, -uit: it is allowed, it is permitted, 3

49 **iam pridem... ..erant:** *had long before now been;* past progressive
suspectae: *mistrusted;* pred. adj.
Caesarī: *for...;* dat. of interest
 50 **(erat) gravis:** nom. pred., supply erat
ut...tuērētur: *so that...;* purpose; impf. pass. subj. tueor
ut...liceret: *that it...;* ind. command
 51 **lātā:** *passed;* PPP ferō: ferre lēgem is an idiom for proposing or passing a law
sibi: *for...;* dat. of interest, i.e. Caesar
absentī: *while...;* dat. sg. pres. pple absum
inimicī: *rivals;* nom. subj.
 52 **Pompeiō probante:** *although...;* abl. abs.
Caesarem...trādere: *that...;* ind. disc.
 54 **iniūriā:** abl. means
incēnsus: i.e. angered; PPP, Caesar subject

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum: delay, linger; detain
negō (1): deny, say that...not, refuse, 4
ops, opis f.: power; *pl.* resources, influence, 6
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6
Pompeiānus -a -um: Pompeian, of Pompey 2
postrēmō: at last, finally, last of all, 3
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5
probō (1): approve, 4
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: proceed, 4
prōvincia, -ae f.: province, 7
regredior, -ī, regressus sum: step back, 3
Rubico, -ōnis m.: Rubicon river, 1
suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look at; suspect, mistrust
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7
trādūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum: lead over, 3
tueor, tuērī: look over or after, guard, 2

finis: *the border;* the river is the borderline between the province Cisalpine Gaul (Northern Italy) and the rest of Italy
 55 **paulum:** *a little;* adverbial acc. (inner acc.)
 31 **morātus:** pf. dep. pple moror, as often, translate as ‘having Xed’
ut fāma fert: *as the story reports*
 56 **regredi:** dep. inf. regredior
quod sī: *but if...;* ‘as for this’ acc. respect
 56 **sī trānsierimus,...erunt:** *if...we cross, ...will;* fut. more vivid (sī fut. (pf.), fut.); translate the fut. pf. as pres. with fut. sense
 57 **agenda erunt:** *will have to be...;* ‘will be (going) to be done; fut. passive periphrastic
 58 **exercitū...trāductō:** abl. abs.

29g. Gaius Julius Caesar

inceptō, Brundisium profectus est, quō Pompeius cum magnā parte
senātūs profūgerat. Pompeium trānsire in Ēpīrum prohibēre frūstrā 60
cōnātus, iter in Hispāniam fēcit, ubi validissimās Pompeiī cōpiās
vīcit.

Deinde in Ēpīrum profectus, Pompeium Pharsalicō proeliō
superāvit et fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūsus est. Ptolemaeum 65
rēgem, quī Pompeium interficī iusserat īnsidiāsque Caesarī
tendēbat, vīcit atque rēgnum Cleopātrae frātrīque minōrī permīsit.
Pharnacem, Mithridātis filium, quī occāsione temporum ad
rebellandum ūtēbatur, tam cito fūdit ut celeritātem victōriae postea

Aegyptus, -ī m.: Egypt, 2

Brundisium, -ī n.: Brundisium, Brindisi

celeritās, celeritātis f.: speed, 2

cito: quickly, speedily

Cleopatra, -ae f.: Cleopatra

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7

cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5

Ēpīrus, -ī m.: Epirus, 3

frūstrā: in vain, for nothing, 4

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum: pour, shed, 4

incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 5

insidiae, -ārum f.: ambush, trap, 2

59 **bellō...inceptō:** abl. abs. PPP incipiō

Brundisium: place to which

quō...: *to where*; an adverb introducing a relative clause

60 **trānsire:** (*from*) *crossing*; governed by prohibēre; Pompeium is obj. of prohibēre

61 **cōnātus:** pf. dep. pple cōnor; as often translate as ‘having Xed’

cōpiās: *troops*; elsewhere ‘supplies’

62 **vīcit:** pf. vincō

63 **profectus:** pf. dep. pple proficīscor, as often translate as ‘having Xed’

64 **persecūsus est:** pf. dep. persequor
interficī: pass. inf.

Mithridātēs, -is m.: Mithridates, 7

occāsio, -ōnis f.: opportunity, right moment, 2

parvus, -a, -um: small, 4

permittō -ere -mīsī: send, entrust, permit, 3

Pharnaces, -is m.: Pharnaces

Pharsalicus, -a, -um: of Pharsalus

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: keep off, prohibit

Ptolemaeus, -ī m.: Ptolemy, 2

rebellō (1): wage war against, rebel

tendō, -ere, tendī, tentum: stretch, strive

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum: use, employ, enjoy, 5

validus, -a, -um: strong, stout, vigorous

65 **iusserat:** plpf. iubeō

Caesarī: *for...*; dat. of interest

66 **tendēbat:** *was laying out*

vīcit: pf. vincō

Cleopātrae...minōrī: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.; minōrī here means ‘lesser (by birth)’ or simply ‘younger’

ad rebellandum: *for...*; expressing purpose acc. sg. of a gerund (-ing)

68 **ūtēbatur:** deponent with abl. obj. (means)

fūdit: *routed, overcame*; ‘poured’

ut...significārent: *that...*; result clause

with impf. subj.

29h. Gaius Julius Caesar

tribus verbīs significāret, “Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.” Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, quī reliquiās Pompeiānarum partium in 70
 Āfricā coēgerat, dēvīcit. Postrēmō Pompeiī filiōs in Hispāniā
 superāvī; quod proelium tam ācre tamque dubium fuit ut Caesar
 equō dēscenderet cōnsistēnsque ante suōs cēdentēs fortunam
 increpāret, quod sē in eum exitum servāset, dēnūtiāretque
 mīlitibus vēstīgiō sē nōn recessūrum. Verēcundiā magis quam 75
 virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Rōmam inde rediit, ubi quater
 triumphāvit.

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, keen, 4
aciēs, -ēī f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum: move; withdraw, give up, 4
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
cōnsistō, -ere, -stītī: stand still, stop
dēnūtiō (1): declare, order, 2
dēscendō, -ere, -ndī: climb down
dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī: conquer, overcome, 2
dubius, -a, -um: doubtful, wavering, 1
equus, -ī m.: horse, 3
exitus, -ī m.: end (of life), death; departure, 3
fortūna, -ae f.: fortune, chance, luck, 4
increpō, -āre, -uī: chide, rebuke; rustle

- 69 **tribus verbīs:** abl. means; abl. pl. trēs
Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī: three 1s pf. veniō, videō, vincō with asyndeton (no conjunctions) in order to suggest speed and decisiveness
Scīpiōnem: *Scipio (Metellus)*; a senator defeated along with Cato in Thapsus (N. Africa) in 46 BC
 70 **reliquiās:** *the survivors*; ‘remaining factions’ fem. pl. because of fem. pl. partēs
 71 **coēgerat:** plpf. cōgō, ‘gather’
dēvīcit: pf. dēvincō
 72 **quod proelium:** *which...*; relative adj.
ācre: neuter nom. sg. ācer
ut...dēscenderet...dēnūtiāretque: *that...;* result clause with impf. subj.
 73 **equō:** *from...*; abl. of separation
cōnsistēns: *standing together*; pres. pple

Iuba, -ae m.: Iuba (king of Numidians)
magis: more, 7
Numidia, -ae f.: Numidia, 3
Pompeiānus, -a, -um: Pompeian, of P., 2
postrēmō: at last, finally, last of all, 3
quater: four times
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: go back, withdraw
reliquus, -a, um: remaining, left (over), 6
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7
significō (1): show, point out, indicate
triumphō (1): celebrate a triumph, 4
verēcundiā, -ae f.: modesty, shame, shyness 1
vēstīgium, -ī n.: footstep; footprint, track, 2

- ante suōs:** *before his (men)*
cēdentēs: pres. pple cēdō, ‘withdraw’
fortunam: *his fortune*
 74 **quod...servā(vi)isset:** *because...*; or ‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view
in eum exitum: *for this end*
 75 **vēstīgiō:** *from...*; abl. of separation
sē...recessūrum (esse): *that...would...*; ind. disc.with fut. inf. recēdō
Verēcundiā, virtūte: *because of...*; or ‘by’ both abl. of cause
magis quam: *more than*
 76 **resitūta est:** *was restored*
Rōmam: place to which
rediit: pf. redeō

29i. Gaius Julius Caesar

Bellis cīvīlibus cōfectīs, conversus iam ad administrandam rem pūblicam, fastōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit. Senātum supplēvit, comitiīsque cum populō dīvīsīs, 80 sibi sūmpsit iūs nōminandae dīmīdiae partis candidātōrum. Eōs quī lēge Pompeiī dē ambitū damnātī erant restituit atque admīsīt ad honōrēs etiam prōscrīptōrum līberōs. Omnēs medicīnam Rōmae professōs et līberālium artium doctōrēs cīvītate dōnāvit. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dīxit. Dē repetundīs damnātōs etiam 85 ē senātū mōvit. Peregrīnārum mercium portōria īnstituit. Lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit, dispositīs circā macellum custōdībūs quī obsōnia vetita retinērent.

accommodō (1): fit, adapt, adjust
administrō (1): manage, direct; help, 3
admittō, -ere, mīsi, missum: admit, allow
ambitus, -ūs m.: bribery, canvassing for votes
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7
candidātus, -ī m.: candidate
circā: about, around, 4
comitium, -ī n.: meeting, assembly, 4
convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum: turn, reverse, 6
corrīgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum: correct, reform
cursum, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6
custōs, custōdis m.: guard, doorkeeper, 3
damnō (1): condemn, punish, convict, 3
dīmīdius, -a, -um: half, one-half
dispōnō, -ere: arrange distribute
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7
doctor, -ōris m.: instructor
dōnō (1): give, bestow, 5
exerceō, -ēre, -uī: exercise, employ, 3
fastī, -ōrum m.: list of days; calendar
labōriōsus, -a, -um: toilsome, wearisome
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7

78 **bellis...cōfectīs:** abl. abs.
conversus: *having turned (his attention)*
ad administrandum rem pūblicam: *for...;*
 translate gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
 80 **comitiīs...dīvīsīs:** abl. abs.
 81 **sibi:** *for...;* dat. ind. obj.
iūs: *the right;* ‘privilege,’ neuter acc. sg.
nōminandae...partis: *of...;* see line 78
Eōs quī: *those who...*
Lēge Pompeiī: *by a law of Pompey*

līber, lībera, līberum: free, 4
līberālis, -e: of or befitting a free man, 2
macellum, -ī n.: market, meat-market
medicīna, -ae f.: art of healing, medicine
merx, mercis f.: goods, merchandise
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum: move, arouse, 5
nōminō (1): call by name, name, mention
obsōnium, -ī n.: food; relish; side-dish
peregrīnus, -a, -um: foreign; foreigner, 5
portōrium, -ī n.: toll, tax, duty
praecipuē: especially, 2
profiteor, -ēri, professus sum: profess, 2
prōscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī: proscribe, outlaw 1
repetundae, -ārum f.: extortion
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum: hold back, 3
sevērus, -a, -um: serious, stern, strict
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3
sumō, sumere, -mpsī, -mptum: take (up), 5
sumptuārius, -a, -um: of expense, luxury
supplēō, -ēre, -ēvī: fill up, fill out; supply 1
vetitus, -a, -um: forbidden, prohibited

83 **honōrēs:** *political offices;* ‘honors’
prōscrīptōrum: *of those proscribed*
Rōmae: *at Rome;* locative, place where
 84 **professōs:** *having professed;* pf. dep. pple
cīvītate dōnāvit: *bestow with citizenship*
 85 **iūs...dīxit:** *dispensed justice*
Dē repetundīs damnātōs: *those*
condemned for extortion
 87 **dispositīs...custōdībūs:** abl. abs.
 88 **quī...retinērent:** *who would...;* purpose

29j. Gaius Julius Caesar

Dē ōrmandā īnstruendāque urbe multa cōgitābat, imprīmīs
 ingēns Mārtis templum extruere theātrumque summae 90
 magnitūdinis sub Tarpeiō monte. Habēbat in animō etiam haec:
 iūs cīvīle ad certum modum redigere atque ex ingentī cōpiā lēgum
 optima quaeque in paucissimōs librōs cōferre; bibliothēcās
 Graecās Latīnāsque quās maximās posset īnstituere; siccāre
 Pompīnās palūdēs; ēmittere Fūcīnum lacum; viam mūnīre ā marī 95
 Superō per Āpennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim; perfodere Isthmum
 Corinthium; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum et Thrāciam effūderant,
 coercēre; mox Parthīs īnferre bellum per Armeniam.

Āpennīnus, -ī m.: Apennine Mtns. 1
Armenia, -ae f.: Armenia, 2
bibliothēca, -ae f.: library
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6
coerceō, -ēre, -cuī, -cītum: restrain, confine 1
cogitō (1): think, ponder, turn over
conferō, -ferre: bring together, collect, 4
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5
Corinthius, -ī m.: Corinth, 2
Dācī, -ōrum m.: Dacians (Hungary)
dorsum, -ī n.: back, ridge
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour, shed, 3
ēmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: send/cast out, 3
extruō, -ere, -truxī: build, heap
Fūcīnus, -ī m.: Fucinus
Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 4
imprīmīs: in particular, especially, 3
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring in, wage, 5
īnstuō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum: build, draw up
Isthmus, -ī m.: Isthmus
lacus, -ūs m.: lake, 3

liber, librī m.: book
magnitūdō, -tūdinis f.: size, greatness, 2
mare, maris n.: sea, 6
Mārs, Mārtis m.: Mars, 2
modus, -ī n.: manner, form; measure, 6
mox: soon, 4
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: fortify, build, 5
ōrnō (1): adorn, furnish, 2
palūs, palūdis f.: swamp, marsh, 2
Parthī, -ōrum m.: Parthians, 2
perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī: dig through, transfix
Pompīnus, -a, -um: Pomptine (in Latium)
pontus, -ī m.: sea, 2
quisque, cuiusque: each one, 3
redigō -ere -ēgī -āctum: drive back, reduce, 3
siccō (1): dry, 2
Tarpeius, -a, -um: Tarpeian
templum, -ī n.: temple, 5
theātrum, -ī n.: theater
Thrācia, -ae f.: Thrace

89 **dē ōrmandā īnstruendāque urbe:** *about...*
 perform a flip and translate the noun +
 gerundives as gerunds (-ing) + obj.
multa: *many (things);* substantive, acc. pl.
imprīmīs: elsewhere in prīmīs
 90 **(eōs) ingēns...extruere...monte:**
(namely) that they...; ind. disc. in apposition
 to multa; supply an acc. subj. for extruere
summae magnitūdinis: *of...;* gen. of
 description modifying theātrum
 91 **sub:** *at the foot of...*
habēbat in animō: i.e. he intended
 92 **redigere...cōferre...īnferre:** *namely*

to reduce...to gather...; series of infinitives
 up to line 98 in apposition to haec
ad certum modum: *to a certain limit*
cōpiā: *supply;* lēgum is gen. pl. of lēx
 93 **optīma quaeque:** *each (of) the best*
things; neuter acc. pl.
paucissimōs: *very few;* superlative
 94 **quās...posset:** *as large as possible;* impf.
 subj. possum; subj. of a subordinate verb in
 inf. clause (~ind. disc.)
 95 **marī Superī:** *Adriatic Sea;* ‘Upper Sea’
Parthīs: *on...;* dat. of compound verb
 98 **īnferre bellum:** *to carry on war*

29k. Gaius Julius Caesar

Eum tālia agentem et meditantem mors praevenit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus, agere īnsolentius coepit; senātum ad 100 sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam ut assurgeret monentem īrātō vultū respexit. Cum Antōnius, comes Caesaris in omnibus bellis et tum cōsulātūs collēga, capitī eius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstrīs diadēma, īnsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quārē amplius sexāgintā vīrī, 105 Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, in eum conīūrāvērunt atque cōstituērunt eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū interficere.

amplus, -a, -um: more, full, spacious, 2
Antōnius, -ī m.: Antonius, 5
assurgō, -ere, -surrexī: rise up, stand
aureus, -a, -um: gold, golden, 2
Cassius, -ī m.: Cassius
collēga, -ae m.: colleague, partner, 5
comes, -itis m. f.: companion, comrade, 3
conīūrō (1): swear together, conspire, 4
cōsulātūs, -ūs m.: consulship 6
diadēma, -ātis n.: diadem, headress, crown, 3
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: take out, receive, 5
Īdūs, -uum: Ides, 3
impōnō, -ere, -posuī: place upon, impose, 2
īnsigne, -is n.: badge, decoration, mark
īnsolēns (1): insolent; unusual
īrātus, -a, -um: angry, 6

99 **eum:** *him*; i.e. Caesar
talia: *such things*; neuter pl.
agentem, meditantem: pres. pple, agō, 'do' and meditor
100 **Dictātor:** nom. pred. with PPP creō
in perpetuum: *in perpetuity, forever*
īnsolentius: comparative adv.
agere: *to behave, act*
101 **sedēns:** (*while*)...; nom. pres. pple
excēpit: *he welcomed, he greeted*
quendam: *a certain man*; acc. sg. quīdam
ut assurgeret: *that...*; ind. command
monentem: pres. pple. moneō, 'warn'
102 **īrātō vultū:** *with...*; abl. of manner
Cum...imposuisset: *when...*; plpf. subj.
Comes...et collēga: nom. apposition
103 **captitī:** *on...*; caput, dat. of compound
eius: *his*; gen. possession, is, ea, id

Mārtius, -a, -um: of Mars, 4
meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum: reflect, think
moneō, -ēre, -uī, monitum: warn, 4
mors, mortis f.: death, 6
offendō, -ere, -dī, -sum: meet; offend, 2
perpetuus, -a, -um: constant, everlasting
praeveniō, -īre, -vēnī: come before, precede 1
quārē: For what reason? Why? 1
rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6
repellō, -ere, -ppulī, -pulsum: drive away, 2
respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum: look to, 3
rōstra, -ōrum n.: speaker's platform, 2
sedeō, sedēre, sedī: sit, sit down; set, 7
sella, -ae f.: chair, 2
sexāgintā: sixty
tālis, -e: such, the sort, 2
vultus, -ūs m.: expression, face, 2

sedentis: pres. pple modifying eius
104 **prō:** *in front of...*
id: *it*; i.e. the neuter sg. diadēma
ab eō: abl. agent, i.e. Caesar
ut...vidērētur: *that...*; result, impf. subj. videor, 'seem'
offēnsus: predicated nom.
105 **Quārē:** *for this reason*; connective relative, abl. of cause
amplius: *more (than)*
106 **Cassiō...ducibus:** abl. abs., subject and predicate, supply pple 'being'
in eum: *against...*
107 **eum:** *him*; object of interficere
Īdibus Mārtiīs: *on...*; abl. of time when i.e. March 15th; Īdūs is a plural noun

291. Gaius Julius Caesar

Quamquam prōdigia eum dēterrēbant et harūspex Spūrinna monēbat ut cavēret perīculum quod nōn ultrā Mārtiās Īdūs prōferrētur, statuit tamen eō diē senātum habēre. Dum Cūriam intrat, Spūrinnam irrīsīt, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Īdūs Mārtiae adessent. 110

“Vēnērunt quidem,” inquit Spūrinna, “sed nōn praeteriērunt.” Caesarem assidentem coniūrātī speciē officīi circumstetērunt; ūnus deinde quasi aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit et, cum Caesar renueret, ab ūtrōque humerō togam apprehendit. Dum Caesar clāmat, “Ista quidem vīs est!” Casca eum adversum vulnerat 115

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum: approach, 2
adsum, -esse, -fuī: be present, assist., 2
aliquī, -qua, -quod: some, any, definite, 3
apprehendō, -ere, -dī: seize, take hold of
assidō, -ere, -sēdī: take a seat, be seated
Casca, -ae m.: Casca, 2
caveō, -ēre, cāvī: beware, be on guard
circumstō, -āre, -stetī: surround, beset
clāmō (1): cry, shout out, 6
coniūrō (1): swear together, conspire, 4
Cūria, -ae f.: senate house, Curia, 8
dēterreō, -ēre, -uī: frighten off, prevent, 3
harūspex, -spicis m.: haruspex, soothsayer 1
humerus (umerus), -ī m.: shoulder
Īdūs, -uum: Ides, 3
intrō (1): go into, enter, 2
irrideō, -ēre, -rīsī: laugh at, mock
iste, ista, istud: that (of yours), those, 2
Mārtius, -a, -um: of Mars, 4

109 **ut cavēret:** *that...*; ind. command
quod...prōferrētur: *which...*; impf. pass. subj.; subj. of a subordinate clause in an ind. command
Mārtiās Īdūs: acc. pl. object of *ultrā*
 110 **statuit:** *decided*
eō diē: *on...*; abl. of time when, *eō* is a demonstrative adj.
habēre: *to hold*
 111 **quod...adessent:** *because...*; or ‘on the grounds that...’ causal *quod* clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view
suā: *for himself*; *suā* is a possessive equiv.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, monitum: warn, 4
noxā, -ae f.: harm, injury, 2
officium, -ī n.: duty, obligation, 4
praetereō, -īre, -ivī: go past, pass, pass by
prōdigium, -ī n.: omen, portent, 3
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: extend, bring, 4
prope: nearly almost; near (acc.), 5
quāsī: as if, just as, as though, 2
renuō, -ere, -uī: deny, nod back, reject, 1
rogō (1): ask, 3
sine: without, 5
species, -ei f.: sight, look, appearance, 3
Spūrinna, -ae f.: Spurinna, 3
toga, -ae f.: toga, 5
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 4
ultrā: beyond, more than, besides (acc) 1
uterque, utraque, utrumque: each, both, 6
vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

to an objective gen.
Īdūs Mārtiae: nom. subj.
 113 **Venērunt:** *Īdūs Mārtiae* is the subject
assidentem: pres. pple
coniūrātī: *those sworn*; PPP, nom. subject
 114 **speciē officīi:** *with the appearance...*; abl. of manner and objective gen.;
 115 **quasi...rogātūrus:** *as if about to...*; fut. pple *rogō*
proprius: comparative adv. of *prope*
 116 **ab ūtrōque humerō:** i.e. by...
 117 **Ista quidem vīs est:** “This is Violence!”
adversum: *facing opposite*

29m. Gaius Julius Caesar

paulum infrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est. 120
Deinde ut animadvertit undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvī et tribus et vīgintī plagīs cōnfossus est. Cum Marcum Brūtum, quem filiū locō habēbat, in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxisse fertur: “Tu quoque, mī fili!”

Percussōrum autem nēmō ferē trienniō amplius supervīxit. 125
Damnātī omnēs variīs cāsibus periērunt, pars naufrāgiō, pars proeliō; nōnnūllī sēmet interfēcērunt eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō Caesarem cōnfōderant.

amplus, -a, -um: more, full, spacious, 2
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī: notice; punish, 4
arripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum: snatch, grab, 2
bracchium, -ī n.: arm
Casca, -ae m.: Casca (cognomen), 2
cāsus, -ūs m.: misfortune, mishap; fall, 2
cōnfodiō, -ere, -fodī, -fossus: dig, stab, 2
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: try, attempt, 7
damnō (1): condemn, punish, convict, 3
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7
graphium, -ī n.: stylus, s writing-stylus
infrā: below, underneath
irruō, -ere, -ruī: rush in on on, 2
iugulum, -ī n.: throat
locō (1): put, place, 2
Marcus, -ī m.: Marcus, 4
naufrāgium, -ī n.: shipwreck
nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā: no one, 6
nōnnūllus, -a, -um: some, several, 2

obvolvō, -ere, -vī: wrap around, cover over
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6
percussor, -ōris m.: murderer, assassin, 2
perēō, -ire, perī: pass away, perish, 3
plaga, -ae f.: blow, strike
prōsiliō, -ire, -uī: leap or jump forward, 2
pūgio, pūgiōnis m.: short dagger, 2
stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictum: draw, pull out
supervivō, -ere, -vīxī: survive, live beyond
tardō (1): make slow, hinder, delay
toga, -ae f.: toga, 5
trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iactum: stab, pierce
triennium, -ī n.: three years
tū: you, 6
undique: from everywhere, from all sides, 2
varius, -a, -um: various, 3
vīgintī: twenty, 6
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

119 **paulum:** *a little*; adverbial acc.
Cassae: gen. possession with bracchium
arreptum trāiēcit: English prefers two finite verbs ‘grabbed and pierced,’ while Latin often prefers to make the first action a PPP and the second a finite verb.
120 **graphiō:** abl. means
cōnātus: pf. dep. pple cōnor, as often translate this pple as ‘having Xed’
aliō vulnere: *by...*; abl. means
121 **ut:** *when..., as...;* ut + indicative
sē...petī: *that...;* ind. disc., pass. inf. petō
strictīs pūgiōnibus: abl. means (not abs.) with PPP stringō

122 **tribus et vīgintī:** single number, abl. trēs
cum...vīdisset: plpf. subj., Caesar is subject
123 **locō:** i.e. in the role; filiū is gen. sg.
habēbat: *held;* i.e. considered, i.e. Caesar
in sē: *upon...; against...*
124 **dīxisse:** *to...;* pf. active inf. dīcō
fertur: *he is reported;* common idiom
mī fili: voc. direct address; -ius nouns have -ī in the voc. case
125 **trienniō:** *than...;* abl. of comparison
amplius: *more*
126 **pars...pars...:** *some...others...*
127 **sēmet:** *themselves;* emphatic form of sē
quō: *by which...;* relative, abl. of means

29n. Gaius Julius Caesar

Quō rārior in rēgibus et p̄ncipibus virīs moderātiō, hōc
laudanda magis est. Caesar victōriā cīvīlī clēmētissimē ūsus est; 130
cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistolārum ad Pompeium
missārum ab eīs quī vidēbantur aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse
partibus, legere noluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius
cōnsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī
tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī solēret nisi iniūriās. 135

clēmēns, -entis: mild, gentle, kind
comburō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum: burn up
consulō, -ere, -uī, consultum: consult, 3
dēprehendō, -ere, -sī: seize upon, discover, 2
dīversus, -a, -um: different, contrary, 3
epistula, -ae f. (1): letter, epistle
eximius, -a, -um: exempt, excepted
hīc: here
iniūria, -ae f.: wrong, insult, injustice, 5
laudō (1): praise, glorify, 5
laus, laudis f.: praise, glory, merit, 4
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7

129 **Quō rārior...hōc...magis:** *the more unusual...the more...;* ‘by how (much) more unusual...by this (much) more...’ the relative quō and demonstrative hōc are abl. of degree of difference with comp. adj. and adv. respectively; these correlatives are often left out in English translation
in: *among...*

p̄ncipibus: *the foremost;* else ‘leaders’
moderātiō (est): subject, supply verb
130 **laudanda est:** *has to be..., must be...;* passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expressing obligation or necessity; the subject is fem. sg. moderātiō
ūsus est: pf. dep., ūtor governs an abl. obj.
clēmētissimē: superlative adv.

131 **cum...dēprehendisset:** *when...;* plpf. subj., Caesar is subject

enim: *for...;* or ‘indeed,’ translate first
132 **missārum:** PPP mittō modifying gen. pl. epistolārum
ab eīs: *by those;* abl. of agent

magis: more, 7
moderātiō, -ōnis f.: moderation
neuter, -tra, -trum: neither, 2
nisi: if not, unless, 7
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī: not...wish, be unwilling, 4
oblīvīscor, -scī, oblītus sum: forget
rārus, -a, -um: unusual, scattered, set apart
scrīnium, -ī n.: case, chest, box
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum: be accustomed, 4
tribō, -ere, -uī, tribūtum: assign, bestow, 3
ūsus, -ūs m.: use, practice; advantage

vidēbantur: *seemed;* passive videor is often translated as ‘seem’
aut in dīversīs (partibus) aut in neutrīs partibus: *either...or...;* the partēs are political ‘factions’ and dīversus can mean ‘opposing’
fuisse: pf. inf. sum

133 **legere, combussit:** add epistolās as obj.
nē...darent: *so that by chance they might not give an opportunity of advising more harshly against many men;* i.e. not bias Caesar’s opinion of men who sided with Pompey against Caesar during the civil war and whose names are mentioned in the letters; neg. purpose clause

134 **Caesarī:** dat. ind. obj.
quod...solēret: (*namely*) *that he...;* quod clause in apposition to laudem; the subj. indicates ind. disc. (equiv. to subj. of a subordinate clause in ind. disc.)
oblīvīscī: pres. dep. inf. oblīvīscor
nisi: *except*

30a. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Marcus Tullius Cicerō, equestrī genere, Arpīnī, quod est 1
Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Nōndum adultus, ā patre Rōmam
missus est, ut celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs interesset atque
eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerilis ad hūmānitātem solet
īformārī; quod magnō successū magnāque admīrātiōne et 5
praeceptōrum et cēterōrum discipulōrum fēcit; cum enim fāma dē
Cicerōnis ingenīō et doctrīnā ad aliōs perlāta esset, multī repertī
esse dīcuntur quī eius videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent.

Cum nullā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam
mūnīrī posse intellexeret quam arte dīcendī et ēloquentiā, tōtō 10

adeō: to such a degree, so, 2
admīrātiō, -nis f.: admiration, astonishment, 3
adultus, -a, -um: grown up, mature
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7
Arpīnum, -ī n.: Arpinum
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7
celeber, -ris, -re: renowned, famous
cēterī, -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 4
discipulus, -ī m.: student, pupil
discō, -ere, didicī, --: learn, learn how
doctrīna, -ae f.: instruction, teaching, 2
ēloquentia, -ae f.: eloquence, 5
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 3
fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7
genus, -eris n.: birth, race; kind, family, 4
grātiā, -ae f.: thanks; *grātiā*, for the sake of, 3
honor, -ōris m.: honor; offering, sacrifice, 3
hūmānitās, -tātis f.: culture, refinement, 2
īformō (1): give form, shape, mold

- 1 **equestrī genere:** *of...*; abl. quality
Arpīnī: *at...*; locative, place where
- 2 **nātus est:** pf. dep. nascor
- 3 **ut...interesset...disceret:** *so that...might*;
purpose clause with impf. subj.
scholīs: *in...*; dat. of compound verb
- 4 **eās:** *those*; a demonstrative adj.
quibus: *by which...*; artēs are antecedent
ad...: *for...*; expressing purpose
- 5 **quod:** *this*; acc. obj., a connective relative
et...et...: *both...and*
- 6 **cum enim...perlāta esset:** *for when...*;
plpf. pass. subj. perforō
- 7 **reperit esse:** pf. pass. inf. following
dīcuntur; the final ‘-ī’ agrees with multī

ingenium, -ī n.: intellect, talent; character, 5
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum: realize,
understand, 2
intersum, -esse, -fuī: take part in, be in
magis: more, 7
magister, -ī m.: Master; helmsman, teacher, 9
Marcus, -ī m.: Marcus, 4
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: fortify, build, 5
nōndum: not yet, 3
oppidum, -ī n.: town, fortified town
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry; endure, 4
praeceptor, -ōris m.: instructor, teacher
puerilis, -e: of a boy or child, childish
reperiō -īre -pperī -pertum: find, discover, 3
schola, -ae f.: school, place of learning, 3
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum: be accustomed, 4
successus, -ūs m.: success, advancement, 1
Tullius, -ī m.: Tullius, 5
Volscī, -ōrum m.: Volscians, Volsci, 4

- dīcuntur:** *are said*
- 8 **quī...adīrent:** *who...*; relative clause of
characteristic with impf. subj. ad-ēō
eius videndī...grātiā: *for the sake of...*; +
gen.; translate this noun + gerundive as a
gerund (-ing) and obj. ‘him’
 - 9 **cum...intellexeret:** *since he...*; causal
nullā rē magis...quam: *by no thing more
than by...*; all ablatives are abl. of means
ad...honōrēs: *to...political offices*
viam...posse: *that a path is able to be
built...*; ind. disc., possum
 - 10 **dīcendī:** gen. sg. of a gerund (-ing)

30b. Marcus Tullius Cicero

animō in eius studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita versātus est ut 11
nōn solum eōs quī in forō et iūdicīis causās dīcerent studiōsē
sectārētur, sed prīvātīm quoque dīligentissimē sē exercēret.

Prīmum ēloquentiam et libertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit.
Erat enim Rōscius quīdam, dē parricīdiō accūsātus, quem ob 15
potentiam Chrysogonī, Sullae libertī, quī in eius adversariīs erat,
nēmō alius dēfendere audēbat; Cicerō tamen tantā ēloquentiae vī
eum dēfendit, ut iam tum in arte dīcendī nēmō eī pār esse vidērētur.
Posteā Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit, ubi Antiochum
philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde ēloquentiae causā Rhodum sē 20

accūsō (1): accuse, blame, reprimand, 3
adversariūs, -ī m.: opponent, adversary
Antiochus, -ī m.: Antioch
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7
Athēnae, -ārum f.: Athens, 2
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: dare, venture, 5
Chrysogonus, -ī m.: Chrysogonus
dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfensum: defend, 6
dīligēns, -ntis: diligent, careful, industrious, 2
ēloquentia, -ae f.: eloquence, 5
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, exercitum: exercise, 3
grātiā, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks; grātiā,
for the sake of + gen. 3
incumbō, -ere, -cubūī: lie on, recline, lean
iūdicium, -ī n.: judgment; trial, court, 3
libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2

libertus, -ī m.: freedman, 2
nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā: no
one, 6
ob: on account of, because of, 5
ostendō, -ere, ostendī: show, display, 7
parricīdium, -iī n.: parricide, treason 1
philosophus, -ī m.: philosopher, 2
potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 3
prīvātīm: privately, in private
Rhodos, -ī f.: Rhodes (island), 2
Rōscius, -ī m.: Roscius
sector, -ārī, -ātus sum: follow, attend
studiōsus, -a, -um: eager, zealous, anxious, 2
studium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 5
Sullānus, -a, -um: of Sulla
versor, -ārī, versātus: be engaged, involved 1

- 11 **tōtō animō...incubuit**: *inclined with all
his attention*
in...studium: *toward...*
in quō: studium is the antecedent
versātus est: pf. dep. versor
ut...sectārētur...exercēret: *that...; result,
impf. subj.*
12 **nōn solum...sed**: *not only...but (also)*
eōs quī: *those who*
causās dīceret: *plead cases*; an idiom;
relative clause of characteristic with impf.
subj.
studiōsē: adv
13 **dīligentissimē**: superlative adv.
14 **Prīmum**: *first (of all)*; adv.
Sullānōs: *supporters of Sulla*
15 **Erat**: *There was*
quem...audēbat: *whom...; relative*

- 16 **Chrysogonī**: gen. sg.
libertī: gen. in apposition to Chrysogonī
in...: *among..*
eius: *his*; Roscius
17 **tantā...vī**: abl. of manner, irreg. vīs
ut...vidērētur: *that...; result; impf. subj.
videor, 'seem'*
18 **dīcendī**: gen. sg. of a gerund (-ing)
eī: to him; dat. of special adj. pār
pār: nom. pred. of linking inf. esse
19 **Athēnās**: place to which
grātiā: *for the sake of...; + preceding gen.*
20 **causā**: *for the sake of...; + preceding gen.*
Rhodum: *to...; acc. place to which*

30c. Marcus Tullius Cicero

contulit, ubi Molōnem Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, 21
magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dīcentem audīvisset,
flēvisse dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia ēloquentiae laude
prīvārētur.

Rōmam reversus, quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllīus vērō 25
quaestūra aut grātior aut clārīor fuit; cum enim magna tum esset
annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus fuit Siculīs, quōs cōgeret
frūmenta in urbem mittere; postea vērō, dīligentiam et iūstitiam et
cōmitātem eius expertī, honōrēs quaestōrī suō maiōrēs quam ūllī
umquam praetōrī dētulērunt. Ē Siciliā reversus Rōmam, in causīs 30
dīcendīs ita flōruit, ut inter omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et
habērētur prīnceps.

annōna, -ae f.: year's crop, grain; price
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
comitās, -tātis f.: friendliness, kindness, 4
conferō, -ferre: bring together, collect, 4
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: offer, give over 6
difficultās, -tātis f.: trouble, difficulty
dīligentia, -ae f.: diligence, attentiveness, 2
disertus, -a, -um: eloquent, well-spoken
ēloquentia, -ae f.: eloquence, 5
experior, -īrī, expertus sum: experience; test,
prove, 2
flēō, -ēre, -ēvī, flētum: weep, lament, cry, 3
florēō, -ere, -uī: bloom, flower, flourish
frūmentum, -ī n.: grain, 3
Graecia, -ae f.: Greece, 2
Graecus, -a, -um: Greek, 4
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing, grateful, 4
hīc: here

- 21 **sē contulit:** *carried himself*; i.e. proceeded
22 **magistrum:** *as a teacher*; apposition
Quī: *This one*; a connective relative, Molon
dīcentem: pres. pplē dīcō
23 **flēvisse:** pf. inf. flēō
dīcitur: Quī is still subject
quod...prīvārētur: *because...*; subj. for
alleged cause from a character's viewpoint
per hunc: *through this one*; i.e. Cicero
laude: *from the...*; abl. of separation
25 **quaestor:** *as quaestor*
Nūllīus: *of no one*; gen. sg. nēmō

initium, -ī n.: beginning, initiation, entrance 2
iūstitia, -ae f.: justice, fairness
laus, laudis f.: praise, glory, merit, 4
magister, -ī m.: Master; helmsman, teacher, 6
maior, maius: greater, larger; older, 4
molestus, -a, -um: troublesome, annoying, 2
Molo, Molōnis m.: Molon (a person) 2
patrōnus, -a, -um: patron
praetor, -ōris m.: praetor, 3
prīvō (I): deprive of, rob, strip from, 3
quaestor, -ōris m.: quaestor (an official), 7
quaestūra, -ae f.: quaestorship, 2
revertor, -ī reversus sum: turn back, return, 2
rhētor, -is m.: teacher of rhetoric, orator
Sicilia, -ae f.: Sicily, 6
Siculī, -ōrum m.: Sicilians
ūllus, -a, -um: any, 4
umquam: ever

- vērō:** *indeed*; 'in truth' abl. as adverb
26 **cum...esset:** *since...*; causal; impf. sum
27 **initiō:** *in the beginning*; abl. of time when
quōs cōgeret: *whom he compelled...*; causal
relative clause (quōs = 'cum eōs + subj.')
- 29 **expertī:** *(the Sicilians) having experienced*
quaestōrī suō: *to their quaestor*; ind. obj.
30 **reversus:** *having returned*
in causīs dīcendīs: dicere causam means
'to plead a case;' translate this noun +
gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
31 **ut...habērētur:** *that...was held*; result

30d. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Cōsul deinde factus, L. Sergiū Catilīnae coniūrātiōnem ēgregiā virtūte, cōstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīna reī familiāris, quam profūderat, inopiā et dominandī cupiditate incēsus erat 35 indignātusque quod in petitiōne cōsulātus repulsam passus esset; coniūrātiōne igitur factā, senātum interimere, cōsulēs trucidāre, urbem incendere, diripere aerārium cōstituerat. Cicerō autem in senātū, praesente Catilīnā, vehementem orātiōnem habuit et cōsilia eius patefecit; tum ille, incendium suum ruīnā sē 40 restinctūrum esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitum, quem parāverat, profectus est, signa illāturus urbī. Sed sociī eius, quī in urbe remāserant, comprehēnsī in carcere necatī sunt.

aerārium, -ī n.: treasury, 2
 carcer, -eris m.: prison, 2
 Catilīna, -ae m.: Catiline, 5
 comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum: grasp, seize, 5
 comprimō, -ere, -pressī: suppress, restrain
 coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.: conspiracy, pact, 2
 cōstantia, -ae f.: steadfastness, constancy
 cōsulātus, -ūs m.: consulship, 6
 cupiditās, -tātis f.: desire, 2
 cūra, -ae f.: care, concern, worry, 5
 diripiō, -ere, -uī, reptum: snatch, ransack, 3
 dominor, -āre, -ātus sum: be lord or master 1
 ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7
 exerceō, -ēre, -uī, exercitum: exercise, 3
 familiāris, -e: of the family; close friend
 incendium, -iī n.: burning fire
 incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēsum: kindle, burn, 7
 indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum: be angered, 3
 inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: bring in, wage, 5

inopia, -ae f.: poverty, need; lack of
 interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: take away, 2
 minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum: threaten, menace
 necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6
 orātiō, -iōnis f.: speaking, speech, language, 3
 patior, -ī, passus sum: suffer; allow (+ inf), 7
 patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī: open, disclose
 petitiō, -ōnis f.: seeking (political office)
 praesēns, -ntis: present, instant
 profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: pour out, 2
 remaneō, ēre, mansī, mansum: remain
 repulsa, -ae f.: rejection
 restinguō, -ere, -restinxī: put out, quench, 2
 ruina, -ae f.: ruins, downfall, 3
 Sergius, -ī m.: Sergius, 1
 signum, -ī n.: sign, signal; military standard, 6
 socius, -iī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7
 trucidō (1): slaughter, massacre, 2
 vehemēns, -entis: violent, vehement, strong

33 Cōsul: nom. pred. following PPP faciō
 L. Sergiū Catilīnae: of Lucius Sergius Catilina (called Catilina or just Catiline)
 ēgregiā virtūte...cūrā: with...; manner
 34 reī familiāris: of family wealth; or 'of family resources,' gen. sg. with inopiā
 35 profūderat: i.e. spent lavishly
 inopiā et cupiditate: because of...; cause
 dominandī: gen. pl. of a gerund (-ing)
 incēsus erat: plpf. pass.: i.e. angered
 36 indignātus: PPP indignor
 quod...passus esset: because...; with

plpf. dep. subj. patior, 'suffer,'
 37 coniūrātiōne factā: abl. abs.
 38 cōstituerat: had decided; + inf.
 39 praesente Catilīnā: abl. abs., pres. pple
 habuit: delivered
 40 eius: his; i.e. Catiline's
 ille: that one; i.e. Catiline
 sē restinctūrum esse: that...; ind disc. fut.
 41 Rōmā: from...; abl. separation
 42 profectus est: pf. dep. proficīscor
 signa: military standards; Catiline's army
 illāturus: intending to bring...into; fut. pple

30e. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed īnfestīs signīs Rōmam petēns, exercitū Antōniī, Cicerōnis collēgae, opprimitur. 45
 Quam ātrōciter dīmīcātum sit exitus docuit; nēmō hostium bellō superfuit; nam quem locum quisque in pugnandō cēperat, eum mortuus tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est—pulcherrima mors, sī prō patriā sīc concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem 'patrem patriae' 50 appellāvit.

Paucīs post annīs Cicerōnī diem dīxit Clōdius, tribūnus plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus,

Antōnius, -ī m.: Antonius, 5
ātrōciter: fiercely, cruelly, harshly
cadāver, -is n.: corpse, dead body
Catilīna, -ae m.: Catiline, 5
Clōdius, -ī m.: Clodius, 2
collēga, -ae m.: colleague, partner, 5
concidō, -ere, -cidī: fall, fall in battle
dēsistō, -ere, -stīfī: cease; stand apart
dīmīcō (1): fight, struggle, contend, 3
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum: teach, tell, 4
exerceō, -ēre, -uī, exercitum: exercise, 3
exitus, -ī m.: end, death; departure, 3
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 5
indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum: declare, appoint 3
īnfestus, -a, -um: hostile, unsafe, 4
longē: far, 4

maestus, -a, -um: grief-stricken, gloomy
magis: more, 7
mors, mortis f.: death, 6
necō (1): kill, slay, put to death, 6
nēmō, nullūs, nēminī, nēminem, nullō/ā: no one, 6
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: oppress, overwhelm, 5
pugnō (1): fight, 3
pulcher, -ra, -rum: pretty, beautiful, 2
quisque, cuiusque: each one, 3
reperiō -īre -pperī -pertum: find, discover, 3
sīc: thus, in this way, 6
signum, -ī n.: sign, signal; military standard, 6
supersum, -esse, -fuī: survive, be left over; 2
tegō, -ere, texī, tectum: cover; conceal, 2

- 44 **neque:** *not...*; modifies dēstitit
eō magis: *what is more;* a common phrase: eō is abl. of degree of difference 'by this (much)'
ab inceptō: *from the thing undertaken;* abl. of separation, a PPP as substantive
 45 **Antōniī:** gen. sg.
collēgae: gen. in apposition to Antōniī; Antonius was fellow consul with Cicero
 46 **Quam...sit:** *How fiercely it was fought;* ind. question; pf. pass. subj.; impersonal
bellō: abl. means or place where
 47 **quem locum...tegebat:** *whatever position each had taken in fighting, (each) was covering this (position)—(when) dead;* i.e. no one retreated; the antecedent of relative adj. quem locum is the demonstrative eum (locum); mortuus is PPP of morior

- 48 **ā suīs (virīs):** *from...*; abl. separation
 49 **pulcherrima mors, sī concidisset:** (*it would have been*), *if he had...*; past contrary to fact condition (sī plpf. subj. plpf. subj.); the apodosis is missing; superlative adj. of pulcher, 'noble'
prō: *on behalf of...*
 51 **appellāvit:** governs a double acc.
 52 **paucīs post annīs:** *a few years later;* 'after by a few years,' degree of difference
diem dīxit: *appointed a day;* i.e. for a trial
 53 **quod...necāvisset:** *on the charge that...*; 'because,' plpf. subj. of alleged cause
indictā causā: *although the case had been appointed;* concessive; i.e. Cicero executed conspirators before their trial

30f. Marcus Tullius Cicero

tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā, prō eō dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armīs salūtem suam dēfendere, māluit ex urbe 55 cēdere quam suā causā caedem fierī. Proficīscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Deinde Clōdius ēdictum prōposuit, ut Marcō Tulliō ignī et aquā interdīcerētur; illīus domum et vīllās incendit. Sed vīs illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsīderiō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coepit, et 60 māximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītā Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam eī redeuntī ūniversī iērunt; domus eius pūblicā pecūniā restitūta est.

accidō, -ere, accidī: happen, fall to, 2

caedēs, -is f.: slaughter, killing, 4

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum: move; withdraw, give up, 4

Clōdius, -ī m.: Clodius, 2

dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfēsum: defend, 6

dēprecor, -arī, -ātus sum: pray to avert harm

dēsīderium, -ī n.: longing, desire, want

diūturnus, -a, -um: long-lasting, long

ēdictum, -ī n.: proclamation, edict, 2

ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7

fiō, fierī, factus sum: be made, occur, 3

flāgitō (1): demand urgently, entreat, 2

flēō, -ere, -ēvī, flētum: weep, lament, cry, 3

ignis, -is m.: fire, 3

incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsum: kindle, burn, 7

interdicō -ere -dīxī: forbid, prohibit

iūcundus, -a, -um: pleasant, agreeable

lūctus, ūs m.: mourning, grief, sorrow

M.: Marcus, 5

mālō, malle, maluī: prefer, 5

mox: soon, 4

mutō (1): change, alter, 3

obviam: in the way of, to meet (dat) 1

ōrdō, ōrdinis m.: arrangement, order, rank, 3

prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: to set forth, 3

prōsequor, -quī, -cūtus sum: pursue, escort 1

reditus, -ūs m.: return, coming back

revocō (1): call back, summon back, revoke, 3

salūs, -ūtis f.: safety, refuge; health, 4

studium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 5

tamquam: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6

Tullius, -ī m.: Tullius, 5

ūniversus, -a, -um: entire, whole, 2

vestis, -is f.: clothing, 3

vīlla, -ae f.: villa, cottage, 4

54 **veste mūtātā:** abl. abs.

prō eō: *on behalf of...*

dēprecābātur: impf. dep. dēprecor

55 **cum posset...:** *although...*; concessive

cum clause with impf. subj. possum

56 **cēdere:** *to withdraw*

quam...: (*rather*) *than*; comparative clause

suā causā: *for his own sake*; suā is equiv. to

the gen. obj. of the preposition causā

56 **proficīscentem:** *the one...*; i.e. Cicero,

pres. pple, add the pronoun as antecedent

bonī: *good men*; i.e. the senatorial class

57 **prōsecūtī sunt:** pf. dep. prōsequor

ut...interficerētur: *that...*; ind. command

in apposition to ēdictum

Marcō Tulliō: dat. ind. obj., i.e. Cicero

58 **ignī et aquā:** *from...*; abl. separation,

i.e. from offers of shelter and food

illīus: gen. poss. ille; i.e. Cicero

59 **vīs:** *violence*

ingentī dēsīderiō: *with...*; abl. manner

61 **māximō...studiō:** abl. means

62 **Cicerōnī:** *to Cicero*; dat. with accidit

itinere, quō: *on the journey on which...*

63 **iūcundius:** neut. comparative adj.

redeuntī: dat. sg. redeō, pres. pple

30g. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Gravissimae inimicitiae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et Pompeium ortae sunt, ut rēs nisi bellō compōnī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō ēnitēbātur ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitātibus dēterrēret; sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam movēre posset, Pompeium secūtus est. Tamen ā Caesare victōre veniam accēpit. Cum Caesar occīsus esset, Octāviānō, Caesaris hērēdī, fāvit Antōniōque adversātus est, atque effēcit ut ille ā sēnātū hostis iūdicārētur. 65

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem, iam diū sibi inimīcum, prōscripsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō trānsversīs 70

adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum: oppose (dat)
Antōnius, -ī m.: Antonius, 5
calamitās, -itātis f.: loss, calamity, 2
compōnō, -ere, -posuī: arrange; collect
dēterreō, -ēre, -uī: frighten off, prevent, 3
diū: a long time, long, 3
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: make, form, 4
ēnitor, -ī, ēnīsus sum: struggle, strive
faveō, -ēre, fāvī: favor, be propitious (dat) 2
hērēs, hērēdis m./f.: heir, heiress, 2
ineō, -īre, -ī, -itum: go into, enter, 4
inimicitia, -ae f.: hostility, enmity
inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6

65 **illā tempestāte:** *at that time;* abl. time when; tempestās may mean ‘time’

66 **ortae sunt:** pf. dep. ōrior
ut...vidērētur: *so that...;* result; impf. subj. videor, ‘seem’

rēs: *the situation, the circumstances*

nisi: *except*

compōnī: pass. inf. following inf. possum

67 **summō studiō:** abl. manner
ut...dēterrēret: *so that...might;* purpose
inter sē: *to one another*

68 **ā...:** *from...;* abl of separation
dēterrēret: supply eōs as object
cum...posset: *when...;* impf. subj.

69 **neutrum:** i.e. neither Pompey or Caesar
ad...ineundam: *toward...;* translate this

iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 3
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum: move, arouse, 5
neuter, -tra, -trum: neither, 2
nisi: if not, unless, 7
occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: kill, cut down, 7
Octāviānus, -ī m.: Octavian (C’s nephew), 2
prōscribō, -ere, -scripsī: proscribe, outlaw 1
reconciliō (1): win back, recover, 2
societās, -tātis f.: association, alliance, 5
studium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 5
tempestās, -tātis f.: weather; storm, time 2
trānsvertō, -ere, -tī, -versum: turn, change

gerundive (in-eō) as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
70 **ā Caesare:** *from...*

victōre: *as victor;* abl. of apposition
cum...occīsus esset: plpf. subj. occidō

71 **Antoniō:** *Mark Antony*
adversātus est: pf. dep. adversor
effēcit: *brought it about*

72 **ut...iūdicārētur:** *that...;* noun result clause; hostis is nom. pred.

73 **initā...societāte:** abl. abs., PPP ineō

74 **sibi:** *to himself;* i.e. to Antony
quā rē audītā: *this...;* abl. abs., with a connective relative (translate the relative as a demonstrative, ‘this’)

trānsversīs itineribus: abl. abs.; iter can mean ‘route’ as well as ‘journey’

30h. Marcus Tullius Cicero

itineribus in vīllam, quae ā marī nōn longē aberat, fūgit indeque 75
 nāvem cōnscendit, in Macedoniam trānsitūrus. Cum, aliquotiēns in
 altum prōvectus, ventīs adversīs relātus esset, neque iactātiōnem
 maris patī posset, taedium tandem et fugae et vītae eum cēpit;
 aliquandō regressus ad vīllam, “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe
 servātā.” Adventantibus percussōribus, servī parātī ad dīmīcandum 80
 erant; sed ipse eōs dēpōnere lectīcam et quiētōs patī quod sors
 inīqua cōgeret iussit. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et immōtam cervīcem
 praebentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque praecīsae sunt;
 caput relātum est ad Antōnium iussūque eius inter duās manūs in
 rōstrīs positum. 85

absum, -esse, āfuī: be away, be absent, 5
adventō (1): approach, come to
aliquandō: sometimes, at some time, 3
aliquotiēns: several times
altus, -a, -um: high, lofty, tall, 2
Antōnius, -ī m.: Antonius, 5
cervix, cervicis f.: neck
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: collect, compel, 6
cōnscendō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum: climb, mount 1
dēponō, -ere, -posuī: put down, deposit, 5
dīmīcō (1): fight, struggle, contend, 3
fuga, -ae f.: flight, haste, exile, speed, 2
iactātiō, -ōnis f.: tossing, shaking; motion
immōtus, -a, -um: unmoved, immovable
inīquus, -a, -um: uneven, unequal, not fair, 2
iussus, -ūs m.: order, *iussū* by order, 2
lectīca, -ae f.: litter, couch-sedan, 2
longē: far, 4
Macedonia, -ae f.: Macedonia

manus, -ūs f.: hand; group, 7
mare, maris n.: sea, 6
nāvis, nāvis f.: ship, boat, 2
patior, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 7
percussor, -ōris m.: murderer, assassin, 2
praebēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum: present, put forth, 4
praecidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum: cut off, 3
promineō, -ēre: extend, jut out, overhang
quiētus, -a, -um: resting, calm, undisturbed, 4
referō, -ferre, -tulī: report, bring back, 7
regredior, -ī, regressus sum: step back, 3
rōstra, -ōrum n.: speaker’s platform, 2
saepe: often, 3
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7
servus, -ī m.: slave, 6
sors, sortis f.: lot, casting of lots, 3
taedium, -ī n.: weariness, disgust, loathing
tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6
vīlla, -ae f.: villa, cottage, 4

75 **in:** toward...

- aberat:** impf. absum
 76 **trānsitūrus:** *intending to...*; fut. pple
in altum: *into the deep*; i.e. open sea
 77 **ventīs adversīs:** *by...*; abl. of means
relātus esset: cum clause plpf. subj. referō
 78 **patī:** dep. inf. patior, ‘endure’
posset: impf. subj. possum; cum clause
fugae, vītae: *for...*; objective gen. sg.
 79 **regressus:** pf. dep. pple regredior
Moriar: either (1) 1s fut. dep. or (2)
 jussive 1s pres. subj. (‘let me...’)
 80 **servātā:** PPP; supply agent ‘by me’

- Adventantibus percussoribus:** abl. abs.
parātī: predicative nom. PPP, parō
ad dīmīcandum: *for...*; + gerund (-ing)
 81 **eōs...patī:** *that...*; ind. disc., dep. patior
lectīcam: Cicero is transported along the
 road in a litter carried by slaves
quod...cōgeret: *because...*; alleged cause
 82 **prōminentī, praebentī:** *for him...*; dat. of
 interest with two dat. sg. pres. pples
 85 **positum (est):** *was placed*; caput is subject
 the body parts were nailed to the platform

30i. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Quamdiū rēs pūblica lībera stābat, Cicerō in eam cūrās 86
cōgītātīōnēsque ferē omnēs suās cōnferēbat et plūs operae pōnēbat
in agendō quam in scrībendō. Cum autem omnia potestāte ūnūs
C. Iūlii Caesaris tenērentur, nōn sē angōribus dēdidit nec indignīs
homine doctō voluptātibus. Vītāns cōnspectum forī urbisque, rūra 90
peragrābat abdēbatque sē, quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Cum
animus autem nihil agere nōn poterat, sē ad philosophiam referre
cōnstituit atque ita honestissimē molestiās dēpōnere. Huic studiō
Cicerō adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et iam senex omnem
cūrā ad scrībendum convertit. Eō modō plūra brevī tempore, 95
ēversā rē pūblicā, scrīpsit, quam multīs annīs, eā stante, scrīpserat.

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: hide, put away, 2
angor, -ōris m.: anguish, vexation, trouble
brevis, -e: short, brief, 5
C.: Gaius, 5
cōgītātio, -tīōnis f.: thinking over, reflection 1
conferō, -ferre: bring together, collect, 4
conspectum, -ī n.: sight, look; view
convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum: turn, reverse, 6
cūra, -ae f.: care, concern, worry, 5
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī: give up, surrender, 7
dēponō, -ere, -posuī: put down, deposit, 5
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum: teach, tell, 4
ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversum: overturn
ferē: almost, nearly, closely, 7
hīc: here
homō, -inis m/f.: man, mortal, human, 4
honestus, -a, -um: respectable, honorable
indignus, -a, -um: unworthy, undeserving
Iūlius, -ī m.: Julius, 4

86 **in eam:** *on it*; i.e. the republic
plūs operae: *more effort*; 'more of effort,'
88 **agendō, scrībendō:** abl. sg. gerund (-ing)
cum...tenērentur: *since...*
potestāte: abl. means
ūnūs: *of one man*; gen. sg. pronomial ūnus
89 **angōribus:** dat. ind. obj.
90 **homine doctō:** *of...*; abl. of respect
governed by dat. pl. adj. indignus
voluptātibus: dat. ind. obj.
vītāns: nom. pres. pple; Cicero is subject
forī urbisque: objective gen. sg.
91 **quantum:** *as much as*; + impers. licēbat

līber, lībera, līberum: free, 4
licet, -ēre, -uit: it is allowed, permitted, 3
modo: only, merely, simply; just now, 3
molestia, -ae f.: trouble, annoyance
opera, -ae f.: effort, exertion, work, 3
peragrō (1): pass through, traverse
philosophia, -ae f.: philosophy
plūs, plūris: more; many, 4
potestās, -tātis f.: power; rule, sovereignty, 4
quamdiū: how long?; as long as, 2
quantus, -a, -um: how much, how great, 3
referō, -ferre, -tulī: report, bring back, 7
rūs, rūris n.: country; fields, estate, 1
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scriptum: write, 6
senex, senis m.: old man, 2
stō, stāre, stetī, stātum: stand, 3
studium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 5
tribō, -ere, -uī, tribūtum: assign, bestow, 3
vītō (1): avoid, evade, shun, 3

92 **nihil agere:** *to do anything*
93 **constituit:** *decided*
huic studiō: *to...*; dat. ind. obj.
94 **adulēscēns...** *as a youth...*
multum temporis: *much time*; partitive gen
95 **ad scrībendum:** acc. gerund (-ing)
eō modō: *in this way*; abl. of manner
plūra: neut. acc. pl., add the word 'things'
96 **ēversā rē pūblicā:** abl. abs.
multīs annīs: *within...*; abl. of time within
eā stante: *while...*; abl. abs., eā = rē pūblicā

	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	copia	copiae	legatus	legatī	proelium	proelia
Gen.	copiae	copiārum	legatī	legatōrum	proeliī	proeliōrum
Dat.	copiae	copiīs	legatō	legatīs	proeliō	proeliīs
Acc.	copiam	copiās	legatum	legatōs	proelium	proelia
Abl.	copiā	copiīs	legatō	legatīs	proeliō	proeliīs

	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>		<u>3rd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	mīles	mīlites	iter	itinerā
Gen.	mīlitis	mīlitum	itineris	itinerum
Dat.	mīlitī	mīlitibus	itinerī	itineribus
Acc.	mīlitem	mīlitēs	iter	itinerā
Abl.	mīlite	mīlitibus	itinere	itineribus

	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>		<u>4th Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	manus	manūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	manūs	manuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	manuī	manibus	cornū	cornuibus
Acc.	manum	manūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	manū	manibus	cornū	cornuibus

	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>	
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	rēi	rērum
Dat.	rēi	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

Selected Pronouns

Nom.	is	<i>he</i>	ea	<i>she</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Gen.	eius	<i>his</i>	eius	<i>her</i>	eius	<i>its</i>
Dat.	eī	<i>to/for him</i>	eī	<i>to/for her</i>	eī	<i>to/for it</i>
Acc.	eum	<i>him</i>	eam	<i>her</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Abl.	eō	<i>with/from him</i>	eā	<i>with/from her</i>	eō	<i>with/from it</i>
Nom.	eī	<i>they</i>	eae	<i>they</i>	ea	<i>they</i>
Gen.	eōrum	<i>their</i>	eārum	<i>their</i>	eōrum	<i>their</i>
Dat.	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>
Acc.	eōs	<i>them</i>	eās	<i>them</i>	ea	<i>them</i>
Abl.	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>

Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	<i>who, which, that</i>
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	<i>whose, of whom/which</i>
Dat.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>to whom/which</i>
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	<i>whom, which, that</i>
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>by/with/from whom/which</i>

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	<i>that</i>	hic	haec	hoc	<i>this</i>
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	<i>of that</i>	huius	huius	huius	<i>of this</i>
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	<i>to/for that</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>to/for this</i>
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	<i>that</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	<i>this</i>
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	<i>with/from that</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>b/w/f this</i>
<hr/>								
Nom.	illī	illae	illa	<i>those</i>	hī	hae	haec	<i>these</i>
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	<i>of those</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	<i>of these</i>
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>to those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>to these</i>
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	<i>those</i>	hōs	hās	haec	<i>these</i>
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>with/from those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>with/from these</i>

	reflexive pronoun	possessive reflexive adjective					
Nom.	---	suus	sua	suum	suī	suae	sua
Gen.	suī	suī	suae	suī	suōrum	suārum	suōrum
Dat.	sibi	suō	suae	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs
Acc.	sē	suum	suam	suum	suōs	suās	sua
Abl.	sē	suō	suā	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs

Adjectives and Adverbs

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 st /2 nd	altus, -a, -um <i>high</i>	altior, altius <i>higher</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high, most high</i>
	altē <i>deeply</i>	altius <i>more deeply</i>	altissimē <i>very highly, most highly</i>
3 rd	fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i>	fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, very brave, most brave</i>
	fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>very bravely, most bravely</i>

Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
	bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i>	melior, melius <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i>
	magnus, -a, -um <i>great</i>	maior, maius <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um <i>greatest</i>
	parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	minor, minus <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i>
	multus, -a, -um <i>much</i>	---, plus <i>more</i>	plurimus, -a, -um <i>most</i>

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love

	active	translation		passive	translation
Indicative					
Pres.	amō amās amat	amāmus amātis amant	<i>I love</i>	amor amāris amātur	<i>I am loved</i> amāmur amāminī amantur
Impf.	amābam amābās amābat	amābāmus amābātis amābant	<i>I was loving</i>	amābar amābāris amābātur	<i>I was being loved</i> amābāmur amābāminī amābantur
Fut.	amābō amābis amābit	amābimus amābitis amābunt	<i>I will love</i>	amābor amāberis amābitur	<i>I will be loved</i> amābimur amābiminī amābuntur
Perf.	amāvī amāvistī amāvīt	amāvimus amāvistis amāvērunt	<i>I have loved</i>	amāta sum amāta es amāta est	amātae sumus amātae estis amātae sunt <i>I have been loved</i> <i>was loved</i>
Plpf.	amāveram amāverās amāverat	amāverāmus amāverātis amāverant	<i>I had loved</i>	amāta eram amāta erās amāta erat	amātae erāmus amātae erātis amātae erant <i>I had been loved</i>
Fut. Pf	amāverō amāveris amāverit	amāverimus amāveritis amāverint	<i>I will have loved</i>	amāta erō amāta eris amāta erit	amātae erimus amātae eritis amātae erunt <i>I will have been loved</i>

Subjunctive

Pres.	amem amēs amet	amēmus amētis ament	same as indicative	amer amēris ametur	amēmur amēminī amentur	same as indicative
Impf.	amārem amārēs amāret	amārēmus amārētis amārent		amārer amārēris amāretur	amārēmur amārēminī amārentur	
Perf.	amāverim amāverīs amāverit	amāverīmus amāverītis amāverint		amāta sim amāta sīs amāta sit	amātae sīmus amātae sītis amātae sint	
Plpf.	amāvissē amāvissēs amāvisset	amāvissēmus amāvissētis amāvissent		amāta essem amāta essēs amāta esset	amātae essēmus amātae essētis amātae essent	

Imperative

amā amāte *love!*

Participle

Pres.	amāns (amantis)	<i>loving</i>			
Perf.				amātus, -a, -um	<i>having been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to love</i>		amandus, -a, -um	<i>going to be loved</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	amāre	<i>to love</i>	amārī	<i>to be loved</i>
Perf.	amāvisse	<i>to have loved</i>	amātum esse	<i>to have been loved</i>
Fut.	amātūrum esse	<i>to be going to love</i>		

videō, vidēre, vīdī, visum: to see

	active		translation	passive		translation
Indicative						
Pres.	videō vidēs videt	vidēmus vidētis vident	<i>I see</i>	videor vidēris vidētur	vidēmur vidēminī videntur	<i>I am seen</i>
Impf.	vidēbam vidēbās vidēbat	vidēbāmus vidēbātis vidēbant	<i>I was seeing</i>	vidēbar vidēbāris vidēbātur	vidēbāmur vidēbāminī vidēbantur	<i>I was being seen</i>
Fut.	vidēbō vidēbis vidēbit	vidēbimus vidēbitis vidēbunt	<i>I will see</i>	vidēbor vidēberis vidēbitur	vidēbimur vidēbiminī vidēbuntur	<i>I will be seen</i>
Perf.	vīdī vīdistī vīdit	vīdimus vīdistis vīderunt	<i>I have seen</i>	vīsa sum vīsa es vīsa est	vīsae sumus vīsae estis vīsae sunt	<i>I have been seen was seen</i>
Plpf.	vīderam vīderās vīderat	vīderāmus vīderātis vīderant	<i>I had seen</i>	vīsa eram vīsa erās vīsa erat	vīsae erāmus vīsae erātis vīsae erant	<i>I had been seen</i>
Fut.pf.	vīderō vīderis vīderit	vīderimus vīderitis vīderint	<i>I will have seen</i>	vīsa erō vīsa eris vīsa erit	vīsae erimus vīsae eritis vīsae erunt	<i>I will have been seen</i>
Subjunctive						
Pres.	videam videās videat	videāmus videātis videant	same as indicative	videar videāris videatur	videāmur videāminī videantur	same as indicative
Impf.	vidērem vidērēs vidēret	vidērēmus vidērētis vidērent		vidērer vidērēris vidērētur	vidērēmur vidērēminī vidērēntur	
Perf.	vīderim vīderīs vīderit	vīderīmus vīderītis vīderint		vīsa sim vīsa sīs vīsa sit	vīsae sīmus vīsae sītis vīsae sint	
Plpf.	vīdissem vīdisēs vīdisset	vīdissemus vīdissetis vīdisset		vīsa essem vīsa essēs vīsa esset	vīsae essemus vīsae essētis vīsae essent	
Imperative						
	vidē	vidēte	<i>see!</i>			
Participle						
Pres.	vīdēns (videntis)		<i>seeing</i>			
Perf.				vīsus, -a, -um		<i>having been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to see</i>	videndus, -a, -um		<i>going to be seen</i>
Infinitive						
Pres.	vidēre		<i>to see</i>	vidērī		<i>to be seen</i>
Perf.	vīdisse		<i>to have seen</i>	vīsum esse		<i>to have been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrum esse		<i>to be going to see</i>			

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead

	active	translation		passive	translation
Indicative					
Pres.	dūcō dūcis dūcit	dūcimur dūcitis dūcunt	<i>I lead</i>	dūcor dūceris dūcitur	dūcimur dūciminī dūcuntur
Impf.	dūcēbam dūcēbās dūcēbat	dūcēbāmus dūcēbātis dūcēbant	<i>I was leading</i>	dūcēbar dūcēbāris dūcēbātur	dūcēbāmur dūcēbāminī dūcēbantur
Fut.	dūcam dūcēs dūcet	dūcēmus dūcētis dūcent	<i>I will lead</i>	dūcar dūcēris dūcetur	dūcēmur dūcēminī dūcentur
Perf.	dūxī dūxistī dūxit	dūximus dūxistis dūxērunt	<i>I have led</i>	ducta sum ducta es ducta est	ductae sumus ductae estis ductae sunt
Plpf.	dūxeram dūxerās dūxerat	dūxerāmus dūxerātis dūxerant	<i>I had led</i>	ducta eram ducta erās ducta erat	ductae erāmus ductae erātis ductae erant
Fut. Pf	dūxerō dūxeris dūxerit	dūxerimus dūxeritis dūxerint	<i>I will have led</i>	ducta erō ducta eris ducta erit	ductae erimus ductae eritis ductae erunt
Subjunctive					
Pres.	dūcam dūcās dūcat	dūcāmus dūcātis dūcant	same as indicative	dūcar dūcāris dūcatur	dūcāmur dūcāminī dūcantur
Impf.	dūcerem dūcerēs dūceret	dūcerēmus dūcerētis dūcerent		dūcerer dūcerēris dūceretur	dūcerēmur dūcerēminī dūcerentur
Perf.	dūxerim dūxerīs dūxerit	dūxerīmus dūxerītis dūxerint		ducta sim ducta sīs ducta sit	ductae sīmus ductae sītis ductae sint
Plpf.	dūxissem dūxisse dūxisset	dūxissemus dūxissetis dūxisset		ducta essem ducta esse ducta esset	ductae essemus ductae essetis ductae essent
Imperative					
	dūc	ducite	<i>lead!</i>		
Participle					
Pres.	ducēns (dūcentis)		<i>leading</i>		
Perf.				ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to lead</i>	ducendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>
Infinitive					
Pres.	dūcere		<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be led</i>
Perf.	dūxisse		<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>
Fut.	ductūrum esse		<i>to be going to lead</i>		

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take

	active	translation		passive	translation
Indicative					
Pres.	capiō capis capit	capimus capitis capiunt	<i>I take</i>	capior caperis capitur	capimur capimini capiuntur
Impf.	capiēbam capiēbās capiēbat	capiēbāmus capiēbātis capiēbant	<i>I was taking</i>	capiēbar capiēbāris capiēbātur	capiēbāmur capiēbāmini capiēbantur
Fut.	capiam capiēs capiet	capiēmus capiētis capiet	<i>I will take</i>	capiar capiēris capietur	capiemur capiēmini capientur
Perf.	cēpī cēpistī cēpit	cēpimus cēpistis cēperunt	<i>I have taken</i>	capta sum capta es capta est	captae sumus captae estis captae sunt
Plpf.	cēperam cēperās cēperat	cēperāmus cēperātis cēperant	<i>I had taken</i>	capta eram capta erās capta erat	captae erāmus captae erātis captae erant
Fut. Pf	cēperō cēperis cēperit	cēperimus cēperitis cēperint	<i>I will have taken</i>	capta erō capta eris capta erit	captae erimus captae eritis captae erunt

Subjunctive

Pres.	capam capās capat	capāmus capātis capant	same as indicative	capar capāris capatur	capāmur capāmini capantur	same as indicative
Impf.	caperem caperēs caperet	caperēmus caperētis caperent		caperer caperēris caperetur	caperēmur caperēmini caperentur	
Perf.	cēperim cēperīs cēperit	cēperīmus cēperītis cēperint		capta sim capta sīs capta sit	captae sīmus captae sītis captae sint	
Plpf.	cēpissēm cēpissēs cēpisset	cēpissēmus cēpissētis cēpissent		capta essem capta essēs capta esset	captae essēmus captae essētis captae essent	

Imperative

cape capite *take!*

Participle

Pres.	capiēns (cipientis) <i>taking</i>	
Perf.		captus, -a, -um <i>having been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to take</i>
		capientus, -a, -um <i>going to be taken</i>

Infinitive

Pres.	capere	<i>to take</i>	capī	<i>to be taken</i>
Perf.	cēpisse	<i>to have taken</i>	captum esse	<i>to have been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrum esse	<i>to be going to take</i>		

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum: to hear

	active	translation		passive	translation
Indicative					
Pres.	audiō audīs audiit	audīmus audītis audiunt	<i>I hear</i>	audiōr audīris audītur	<i>I am heard</i> audīmur audīminī audiuntur
Impf.	audiēbam audiēbās audiēbat	audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant	<i>I was hearing</i>	audiēbar audiēbāris audiēbātur	<i>I was being heard</i> audiēbāmur audiēbāminī audiēbantur
Fut.	audiam audiēs audiet	audiēmus audiētis audient	<i>I will hear</i>	audiar audiēris audiētur	<i>I will be heard</i> audiēmur audiēminī audiēntur
Perf.	audīvī audīvistī audīvit	audīvimus audīvistis audīverunt	<i>I have heard</i>	audīta sum audīta es audīta est	audītae sumus audītae estis audītae sunt <i>I have been heard</i> <i>was heard</i>
Plpf.	audīveram audīverās audīverat	audīverāmus audīverātis audīverant	<i>I had heard</i>	audīta eram audīta erās audīta erat	audītae erāmus audītae erātis audītae erant <i>I had been heard</i>
Fut.pf	audīverō audīveris audīverit	audīverimus audīveritis audīverint	<i>I will have heard</i>	audīta erō audīta eris audīta erit	audītae erimus audītae eritis audītae erunt <i>I will have been heard</i>
Subjunctive					
Pres.	audiam audiās audiat	audiāmus audiātis audiant	same as indicative	audiar audiāris audiātur	audiāmur audiāminī audiāntur same as indicative
Impf.	audīrem audīrēs audīret	audīrēmus audīrētis audīrent		audīrer audīrēris audīretur	audīrēmur audīrēminī audīrentur
Perf.	audīverim audīverīs audīverit	audīverīmus audīverītis audīverint		audīta sim audīta sīs audīta sit	audītae sīmus audītae sītis audītae sint
Plpf.	audīvissem audīvisse audīvisset	audīvissemus audīvissetis audīvissent		audīta essem audīta essēs audīta esset	audītae essēmus audītae essētis audītae essent
Imperative					
	audi	audīte	<i>hear!</i>		
Participle					
Pres.	audiēns (audientis)	<i>hearing</i>			
Perf.				audītus, -a, -um	<i>having been heard</i>
Fut.	audītūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to hear</i>		audiendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be heard</i>
Infinitive					
Pres.	audīre	<i>to hear</i>		audīrī	<i>to be heard</i>
Perf.	audīvisse	<i>to have heard</i>		audītum esse	<i>to have been heard</i>
Fut.	audītūrum esse	<i>to be going to hear</i>			

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be			possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can			
translation			translation			
Indicative						
Pres.	sum es est	sumus estis sunt	<i>I am</i>	possum potes potest	possumus potestis possunt	<i>I am able, can</i>
Impf.	eram erās erat	erāmus erātis erant	<i>I was</i>	poteram poterās poterat	poterāmus poterātis poterant	<i>I was able, could</i>
Fut.	erō eris erit	erimus eritis erunt	<i>I will be</i>	poterō poteris poterit	poterimus poteritis poterunt	<i>I will be able</i>
Perf.	fuī fuiſī fuit	fuimus fuiſtis fuerunt	<i>I have been, I was</i>	potuī potuiſī potuit	potuimus potuiſtis potuerunt	<i>I have been able, I was able, could</i>
Plpf.	fueram fuerās fuerat	fuerāmus fuerātis fuerant	<i>I had been</i>	potueram potuerās potuerat	potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant	<i>I had been able</i>
Fut. Pf.	fuerō fueris fuerit	fuerimus fueritis fuerint	<i>I will have been been</i>	potuerō potueris potuerit	potuerimus potueritis potuerint	<i>I will have been able</i>
Subjunctive						
Pres.	sim sīs sit	sīmus sītis sint	same as indicative	possim possīs possit	possīmus possītis possint	same as indicative
Impf.	essem essēs esset	essēmus essētis essent		possem possēs posset	possēmus possētis possent	
Perf.	fuerim fuerīs fuerit	fuerīmus fuerītis fuerint		potuerim potuerīs potuerit	potuerīmus potuerītis potuerint	
Plpf.	fuissem fuiſſēs fuiſſet	fuiſſēmus fuiſſētis fuiſſent		potuiſsem potuiſſēs potuiſſet	potuiſſēmus potuiſſētis potuiſſent	
Imperative						
	xxx			xxx		
Infinitive						
Pres.	esse	<i>to be</i>	posse	<i>to be able</i>		
Perf.	fuisse	<i>to have been</i>	potuisse	<i>to have been heard</i>		
Fut.	futūrum esse*	<i>to be going to be</i>	----			

* fore is a common indeclinable alternative for futūrum esse.

eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go			sequor, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow		
	active	translation	deponent		translation
Indicative					
Pres.	eō īmus īs ītis it eunt	<i>I go</i>	sequor sequeris sequitur	sequimur sequimini sequuntur	<i>I follow</i>
Impf.	ībam ībāmus ībās ībātis ībat ībant	<i>I was going</i>	sequēbar sequēbāris sequēbātur	sequēbāmur sequēbāmini sequēbantur	<i>I was following</i>
Fut.	ībō ībimus ībīs ībitis ībit ībunt	<i>I will go</i>	sequar sequēris sequētur	sequēmur sequēmini sequentur	<i>I will follow</i>
Perf.	īī iimus īstī īstis īit ierunt	<i>I have gone, went</i>	secūta sum secūta es secūta est	secūtae sumus secūtae estis secūtae sunt	<i>I have followed</i>
Plpf.	ieram ierāmus ierās ierātis ierat ierant	<i>I had gone</i>	secūta eram secūta erās secūta erat	secūtae erāmus secūtae erātis secūtae erant	<i>I had followed</i>
Fut. Pf.	ierō ierimus ieris ieritis ierit ierint	<i>I will have gone</i>	secūta erō secūta eris secūta erit	secūtae erimus secūtae eritis secūtae erunt	<i>I will have followed</i>
Subjunctive					
Pres.	eam eāmus eās eātis eat eant	same as indicative	sequar sequāris sequātur	sequāmur sequāmini sequantur	
Impf.	īrem īrēmus īrēs īrētis īret īrent		sequerer sequerēris sequerētur	sequerēmur sequerēmini sequerentur	
Perf.	ierim ierimus ieris ieritis ierit ierunt		secūta sim secūta sis secūta sit	secūtae sīmus secūtae sītis secūtae sint	
Plpf.	īssem īssēmus īssēs īssētis īsset īssent		secūta essem secūta essēs secūta esset	secūtae essēmus secūtae essētis secūtae essent	
Imperative					
	ī īte	<i>go!</i>	sequere	sequitor	<i>follow!</i>
Participle					
Pres.	iēns (euntis)	<i>going</i>	sequēns (gen. sequentis)		<i>following</i>
Perf.	---		secūtus, -a, -um		<i>having followed</i>
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to go</i>	secūtūrus, -a, -um		<i>going to follow</i>
Infinitive					
Pres.	īre	<i>to go</i>	sequī		<i>to follow</i>
Perf.	īsse	<i>to have gone</i>	secūtum esse		<i>to have followed</i>
Fut.	itūrum esse	<i>to be going to go</i>	secūtūrum esse		<i>to be going to follow</i>

volō, velle, voluī: to wish, want

	active	translation		
Indicative				
Pres.	volō vīs vult	volumus vultis volunt	<i>I wish</i>	← Irregular Present Indicative
Impf.	volēbam volēbās volēbat	volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	<i>I was wishing</i>	
Fut.	volam volēs volet	volēmus volētis volent	<i>I will wish</i>	
Perf.	voluī voluistī voluit	voluimus voluistis voluērunt	<i>I have wished</i>	
Plpf.	volueram voluerās voluerat	voluerāmus voluerātis voluerant	<i>I had wished</i>	
Fut. Pf.	voluerō volueris voluerit	voluerimus volueritis voluerint	<i>I will have wished</i>	
Subjunctive				
Pres.	velim velis velit	velimus velitis velint	same as indicative	← Irregular Present Subjunctive
Impf.	vellem vellēs vellet	vellēmus vellētis vellent		← Irregular Imperfect Subjunctive
Perf.	voluerim voluerīs voluerit	voluerīmus voluerītis voluerint		
Plpf.	voluissem voluissēs voluisset	voluissēmus voluissētis voluissent		
Imperative				
	xxxx	xxxx	<i>wish!</i>	
Participle				
Pres.	volēns (gen. volentis)		<i>wishing</i>	
Perf.	xxxx			
Fut.	xxxx			
Infinitive				
Pres.	velle		<i>to wish</i>	← Irregular Infinitive
Perf.	voluisse		<i>to have wished</i>	
Fut.	xxxx			

Uses of the Subjunctive in the Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita

Below is a list of subjunctives common in Caesar's *Gallic War* and Cicero's *1st Catilinarian*. The superscript denotes how many times each subjunctive occurs in *Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita*.

The most common subjunctives in this book are cum-clauses²⁷ and purpose clauses¹⁵ which use imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Some uses of the subjunctive, notably conditions (if-then clauses) and relative clause of characteristic, are not found in the book.

	<u>how to identify</u>	<u>special translation</u>	<u>example</u>
1. Purpose, adverbial or relative	<i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	may/might would	<i>ut Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>so that Aeneas might send</i>
2. Result, adverbial or noun clause	tantus, tam, ita + <i>ut/ut nōn</i>	none	<i>ut Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>that Aeneas sent</i>
3. Cum-Clauses	<i>Cum</i> + subjunctive	none	<i>Cum Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>When Aeneas sent</i>
4. Indirect Question	interrogatives: e.g. <i>quis, cūr</i>	none	<i>nōvit quōs Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>he learned whom Aeneas sent</i>
5. Indirect Command	commanding verb + <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	none	<i>persuāsit ut Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>he persuaded that Aeneas send</i>
6. Relative Clause of Characteristic	<i>quī, quod</i> + subj.	none/would	<i>quōs Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>the sort whom Aeneas would send</i>
7. Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc.	any subordinate verb in an acc. + inf. construction	none	<i>eōs, sī id mitteret, lēgere</i> <i>that they read it, if he sent it</i>
8. Optative Subj. (subj. of wish)	main verb (neg. <i>nē</i>) often with <i>utinam/ut</i>	May...! would that...!	<i>Utinam eōs mittat?</i> <i>Would that he may see</i>
9. Jussive Subj.	main verb (neg. <i>nē</i>) often in 3s or 3p	let/should	<i>Aeneas mittat</i> <i>Let Aeneas send...</i>
10. Quod clause	<i>quod</i> + subjunctive	none	<i>quod Aeneas mitteret</i> <i>because Aeneas sent...</i>
11. Future-Less-Vivid	<i>sī</i> pres. subj., pres. subj.	should/would	<i>sī sit, mittat</i> <i>if he should be...he would send</i>
12. Pres. Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> impf. subj., impf. subj.	were/would	<i>sī esset, mitteret</i> <i>if he were... he would send</i>
13. Past Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> plpf. subj., plpf. subj.	had/would have	<i>sī fuisset, mīssisset</i> <i>if he had been... would have</i>

Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List (Words 8 or More Times)

This is an alphabetized list of the running core vocabulary found at the beginning of this commentary. To use this book properly, readers should review and memorize the running core vocabulary as they read the stories. If they encounter a word in the text that is not found in the corresponding vocabulary, it is most likely in the running core vocabulary and the list below.

- ā, ab, abs:** (away) from, out of, 87
ac: and, and also, 17
accipiō -ere -cēpī -ceptum: receive, accept, 12
ad: to, toward; near, 108
adulescens, -ntis m./f.: youth, 9
adversus, -a, -um: opposite, facing (acc) 13
Aenēās, -ae m.: Aeneas, 7
Āfrica, -ae f.: Africa, 12
ager, agrī m.: land, field, territory, 19
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: drive, lead, spend, 26
Albānus, -a, -um: of Alba Longa, Albans, 10
alius, -a, -ud: other, another, else, 29
animus, -ī m.: soul, spirit, breath; pride, 17
annus, -ī m.: year, 36
ante: before, in front of ; adv. before, 8
anteā: before, earlier, formerly, previously, 9
appellō (1): call (by name), name, 17
apud: among, in the presence of , 9
aqua, -ae f.: water, 8
arma, -ōrum n.: arms, equipment, tools, 14
Asia, -ae f.: Asia Minor, 9
at: but; mind you; but, you say, 9
atque: and, and also, and even, 43
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum: hear, listen to, 10
aut: or , 17
autem: however, moreover, 16
auxilium, -ī n.: help, aid, assistance, 11
bellum, -ī n.: war, 53
bonus, -a, -um: good, kind, useful, 9
Brūtus, -ī m.: Brutus, 13

- Caesar, -is m.:** Caesar, 31
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum: take, seize, 25
captīvus, -ī m.: captive, 10
caput, capitis n.: head; life, 18
Carthāginiēnsis, -is m.: Carthaginian, 14
Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.: Carthage, 12
castra, -ōrum n.: camp, 12
causa, -ae f.: reason, legal case; causā, for the sake of, 8
Cicerō, Cicerōnis m.: Cicero. 19
cīvilis, -e: civil, of a citizen, 10
cīvis, -is m/f: citizen, fellow citizen, 12
cīvitās. cīvitātis f.: city-state; citizenship, 16
clārus, -a, -um: clear, distinguished, famous 8
coepī, coepisse, coeptum: begin, 13
conciliō (1): win over, unite, 9
concordia, -ae f.: harmony, agreement, 8
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store away, hide, 6
conficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: finish (off), accomplish, 10
coniūnx, -iugis m/f: husband, wife, spouse, 9
cōnsilium, -iī n.: plan, advice; council, 14
constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: decide, establish, 13
cōnsul, -is m.: consul, 33
contrā: against, 11
corpus, corporis n.: body, 10
creō (1): create, 21
cum: with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 127
cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -ītum: desire, long for, 8
dē: (down) from, about, concerning (abl.), 29
deinde: then, thereupon, 31
deus, -ī m.: god, divinity, deity, 10
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum: say, speak, tell, 37
dictātor, -ōris m.: dictator, 16
diēs, -ēī m./f.: day, time, season, 24
dō, dare, dedī, datum: give, put; grant, 36
domus, -ī f.: house, home, dwelling, 9
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum: lead, draw, 10
dum: while, as long as, until, 16
duo, duae, duo: two, 19
dux, ducis m/f.: leader, guide, chieftain, 28

- ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 58
ego: I, 14
enim: for, indeed, in truth, 24
et: and, also, even, 179
etiam: besides, also, even, 29
Etrūscus, -a, -um: Etruscan, 13
exercitus, -ūs m.: army, 37
Fabius, -ī m.: Fabius, 9
Fabricius, -ī m.: Fabricius, 10
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum: make, do, 67
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: carry, bear, endure, 22
ferōx, -ōcis: fierce, savage, 8
filia, -iae f.: daughter, child, 12
filius, -iī m.: son, child, 22
fīnitimus, -a, -um: neighboring, bordering, 10
flūmen, -inis n.: river, stream, 12
forte: by chance, 11
forum, -ī n.: forum, 8
frāter, -tris m.: brother, 10
fugiō, -ere, fūgī: flee, hurry away, 11
Gallus, -a, -um: Gaul, Gaul, 17
gēns, gentis f.: clan, race, nation, herd, 9
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum: carry (on), wage, 15
gravis, -e: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 8
habēō, -ēre, habuī, -itum: have, hold, 26
Hannibal, -is m.: Hannibal, 10
hic, haec, hoc: this, that; he, she, it, 62
Hispānia, -ae f.: Hispania, 16
honor, -ōris m.: honor; offering, sacrifice, 8
hostis, -is m./f.: stranger, enemy, foe, 26
iam: now, already, soon, 28
ibi: there, in that place, 13
īdem, eadem, idem: the same, 8
igitur: therefore, then, accordingly, 14
ille, illa, illud: that (famous); he, she, it, 32
imperātor, -ōris m.: commander, 10
imperium, -iī n.: power to command, rule, 23
impetus, -ūs m.: attack, onset, assault, 8

- in:** in (+ abl.) , into (+ acc.), 256
inde: from there, then, afterward, 30
ingēns, ingentis: huge, immense, vast, 8
inquam, inquis, inquit: say, 19
īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: set up, establish, 12
inter: between, among (+ acc.), 27
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: kill, slay, 26
ipse, ipsa, ipsum: -self; the very, 29
is, ea, id: this, that; he, she, it, 167
ita: so, thus, 33
Ītalia, -ae f.: Italy, 17
itaque: and so, 12
iter, itineris n.: way, road, journey, 11
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum: order, command, 36
iūs, iūris n.: justice, law, right, 20
iuvenis, -is m.: youth, young man, 11
- L.:** Lucius, 13
- Latīnus, -a, -um:** Latin, 20
lēgātus, -ī m.: ambassador, envoy, legate, 21
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum: read, choose, 7
lēx, lēgis f.: law, regulation, decree, 11
liberī, -ōrum m.: children, 9
locus -ī m. (pl. loca): place, region, situation 16
magnus, -a, -um: great, large; important, 27
Marius, -ī m.: Marius, 24
māter, mātris f.: mother, 11
maximus, -a, -um: greatest; *maximē*, especially 15
medius, -a, -um: middle of, 8
mīlēs, mīlitis m.: soldier, 16
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum: send, let go, 26
mons, montis m.: mountain, mount, 11
morior, morī, mortuus sum: die; *mortuus*, dead 13
multitūdō, -tūdinis f.: multitude, 10
multus, -a, -um: much, many, abundant, 24
nam: for, 12
nascor, nascī, nātus sum: be born, grow, 14
nē: lest, that not, no, not, 12
nec: and not, nor; nec...nec (neither...nor), 16

neque: and not; neither...nor, 14
nihil: nothing, 12
nōbilis, -e: noble, 10
nōmen, nōminis n.: name, 19
nōn: not, by no means, not at all, 47
novus, -a, -um: new, 19
nox, noctis f.: night, 10
nūllus, -a, -um: none, no, not any, 12
omnis, omne: every, all, 59
opus, -eris n.: work, deed, toil, 9
orior, orīrī, ortus sum: arise, spring up, 8
pār, paris: equal, similar, even, 8
parō (1): prepare, make (ready), 13
pars, partis f.: part; direction; faction, 26
pater, patris m.: father, 40
patria, -ae f.: fatherland, country, 9
paucī, -ae, -a: little, few, scanty, 10
pāx, pācis f.: peace, 31
pecūnia, -ae f.: money, 8
per: through, over, across, 28
perīculum, -ī n.: risk, danger, peril, 8
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum: persuade, 9
petō, -ere, -īvī, petītum: seek, head for, 20
plebs, plēbis, f.: common people, masses, 31
Pompeius, -ī m.: Pompey, 26
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum: put, place, 9
populus, -ī m.: people; population, 35
Porsena, -ae m.: Lars Porsena, 8
possum, posse, potuī: be able, can, avail, 33
post: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 15
posteā: after this, afterwards, 26
prīmus -a -um: first, 30
prīncēps, -cipis m.: leader; foremost, first 9
prō: before, in front of, for, 11
proelium, -ī n.: battle, 19
proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum: set out, depart, 16
profugiō, -ere, -fūgī: flee, escape, 8
propter: on account of, because of, 8

- pūblicus, -a, -um:** public, of the people 19
puer, puerī m.: boy, 15
pugna, -ae f.: fight, 10
Pyrrhus, -ī m.: Pyrrhus (King of Epirus), 8
quamquam: although, 8
que: and, 149
quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?): who, which, that, 253
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam: certain, 22
quidem: indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 10
Quīnctius, -ī m.: Quinctius, 5
quoque: also, 18
redeō, -īre, -ī, -itum: go back, return, come back, 22
rēgia, -ae f.: palace, 9
rēgnō (1): rule, reign, 17
rēgnum, -ī n.: kingdom, realm, power, 21
Rēgulus, -ī m.: Regulus, 9
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum: leave behind, 10
Remus, -ī m.: Remus, 12
rēs, rei f.: thing, matter, affair, business, 55
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: replace, restore, 9
rēx, rēgis m.: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 83
Rōma, -ae f.: Rome, 54
Rōmānus, -a, -um: Roman, 91
Rōmulus, -ī m.: Romulus, 22
Sabīnus, -a, -um: Sabine, 6
sacer, sacra, sacrum: sacred, holy, 8
Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis m.: Scipio, 27
sē: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 89
sed: but, moreover, however, 46
senātus, -ūs f.: senate, 38
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum: follow, attend, pursue, 17
Servius, -ī m.: Servius, 13
Sex.: Sextus, 5
Sextus, -ī m.: Sextus, 4
sī: if (only), whether, in case that, 18
sōlus, -a, -um: alone, only, lone, sole, 13
spēs, -eī f.: hope, 8
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum: decide, establish, set up, 8

sub: under, 8
Sulla, -ae m.: Sulla, 23
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be, 412
summus, -a, -um: highest, greatest, top of, 8
superō (1): overcome, defeat, 12
suus, -a, -um: his, her, its, their (own), 38
tam: so, so much, so very, such, 8
tamen: nevertheless, however, 22
tantus, -a, -um: so great, so much, so large, 14
Tarquinius, -ī m.: Tarquinius, 46
tempus, -poris n.: time, 17
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum: hold, keep, 8
Tiberis, is m.: Tiber, 13
tōtus -a, -um: whole, entire, 12
trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), -itum: pass (by), 14
trēs, tria: three, 12
tribūnus, -ī m.: tribune, officer, 11
tum: then, at that time, 34
Turnus, -ī m.: Turnus, 9
ubi: where, when, 17
ūnus, -a, -um: one, 18
urbs, urbis f.: city, 59
ut: as, when (+ ind.); so that, in order that, 76
uxor, uxōris f.: wife, spouse, 10
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum: come, go, 29
verbum, -ī n.: word, speech, 8
vērus, -a, -um: true, real, 8
via, -ae f.: way, road, 9
victor, -ōris m.: conquerer, vanquisher, 9
victoria, -ae f.: victory, 9
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: see, 27
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum: conquer, defeat, 19
vir, virī m.: man, male, 20
virgō, virginis f.: maiden, virgin, 11
virtūs, -ūtis f.: valor, manhood, excellence, 12
vīs, vīs f.: force, power; *pl.* **vīrēs**, strength, 13
vīta, -ae f.: life; livelihood, 9
vocō (1): call, name; invite, summon, 9
volō, velle, voluī: will, wish, be willing, 18
voluptās, -tātis f.: pleasure, delight, 8

